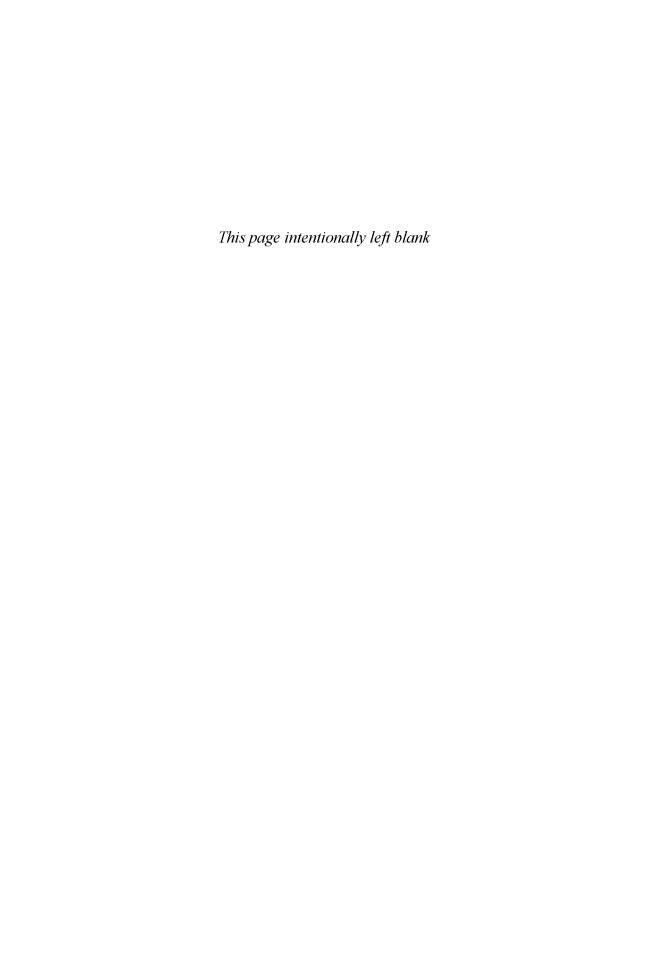
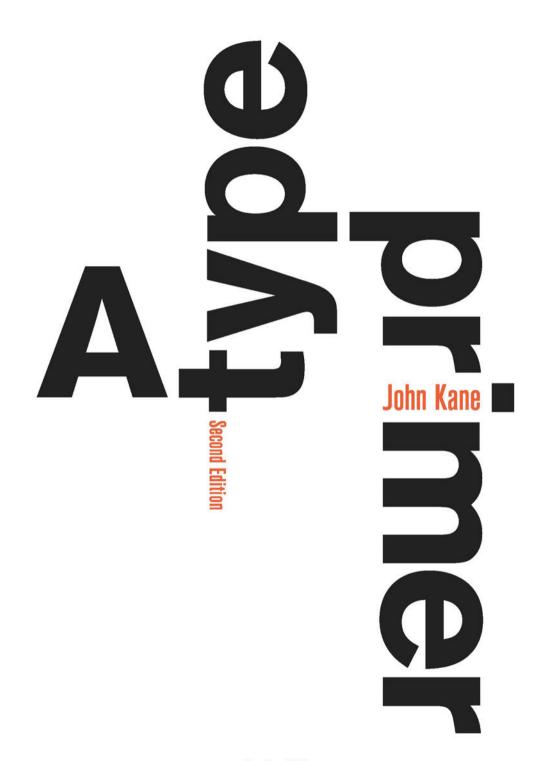
John Kane

A type primer





Prentice Hall

Boston Columbus Indianapolis New York San Francisco Upper Saddle River Amsterdam Cape Town Dubai London Madrid Milan Munich Paris Montréal Toronto Delhi Mexico City São Paulo Sydney Hong Kong Seoul Singapore Taipei Tokyo

Editor-in-Chief: Sarah Touborg Acquisitions Editor: Billy Grieco Editorial Assistant: Jessica Parrotta Assistant Managing Editor: Melissa Feimer Senior Operations Supervisor: Brian K. Mackey Director of Marketing: Brandy Dawson Executive Marketing Manager: Kate Mitchell

Cover design: John Kane

iv

Credits and acknowledgments borrowed from other sources and reproduced, with permission, in this textbook appear on the appropriate page within the text or in the Picture credits opposite.

ISBN-13: 978-0-205-06644-5 ISBN-10: 0-205-06644-5

Commissioning Editor: Kara Hattersley-Smith

Senior Editor: Melissa Danny Production Manager: Simon Walsh

Designer: John Kane Photo Researcher: Evi Peroulaki Copy Editor: Fiona Biggs

Proofreader: Emily Asquith Indexer: Vicki Robinson

Printed in China

Copyright © 2011, 2003 by Pearson Education, Inc., publishing as Prentice Hall, 1 Lake St., Upper Saddle River, NJ 07458. All rights reserved. This publication is protected by copyright, and permission should be obtained from the publisher prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or likewise. To obtain permission(s) to use material from this work, please submit a written request to Pearson Education, Inc., Permissions Department, 1 Lake St., Upper Saddle River, NJ 07458.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Kane, John, 1949A type primer / John Kane. -- 2nd ed.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN-13: 078-0-005-06644-5 (nbk. 19lk page)

ISBN-13: 978-0-205-06644-5 (pbk. : alk. paper)

 Graphic design (Typography) 2. Layout (Printing) I. Title. Z246.K36 2011

686.2'2--dc22

2010040655

10987654321

Prentice Hall is an imprint of



www.pearsonhighered.com

Picture credits

All numbers refer to page numbers (t = top; b = bottom; c = center; r = right; l = left).

Courtesy of Apple 47; © James Austin, Cambridge, UK 19t; The Aviation Picture Library, London 45: reproduced with the kind permission of Transport for London 42; Bibliothèque Royale de Belgique 20l: Bildarchiv Foto Marburg 20t: Courtesy of the Trustees of the Boston Public Library/Rare Books 19r, 20r, 21, 22, 23l, 23r, 24l, 24r, 32, 34, 38; © The British Library Board 26; © Trustees of the British Museum 16; The Museum and Study Collection at Central Saint Martins College of Art and Design 37b; Fototeca Unione, American Academy in Rome 17r; © Peter Kent, London, 43: A.F. Kersting, 27t; LKP Archive 31, 33, 39, 41/© Cameraphoto Arte, Venice 25t/Paul M.R. Maeyaert, Mont de l'Enclus (Orroir), Belgium 29t, 35/© Peter Ashworth 37t; Nina Pattek 40b; © Hattula Moholy-Nagy/DACS 2010 40t; RMN, Paris, 17l; © The Isamu Noguchi Foundation and Garden Museum/ARS, New York and DACS, London 2010 44; Shutterstock 88; E.M. Thompson, An Introduction to Greek and Latin Paleography, 1912, Clarendon Press 18l, 18c, 18r, 19l, 19c; D.B. Updike, Printing Types: Their History, Forms and Use, Volume II, 1922, by permission of Oxford University Press 28.



This book was designed and produced by Laurence King Publishing Ltd, London www.laurenceking.com Author Grace Paley once pushed Hippocrates a bit to say that she wrote short stories because 'Art is too long, life is too short.' That sentiment nicely sums up what has kept this second edition off the shelves until now. The petty illnesses of middle age, combined with expanded professional responsibilities, didn't always allow me to stick as closely to this project as perhaps I should have. Apologies for the delay.

This edition grew out of the support and suggestions of valued colleagues. I am grateful to Nancy Skolos for inviting me to teach type at Rhode Island School of Design, and to Ernesto Aparacio, Jan Fairbairn, Lucinda Hitchcock, Matthew Monk, Bill Newkirk, Akefeh Nurosi, Douglass Scott, Hans van Diik, Tom Wedell, Franz Werner, and - especially - Cyrus Highsmith and Krzysztof Lenk for their lessons in collegiality and professionalism. Students Mitchell Goldstein and Katherine Hughes at RISD offered invaluable teaching support.

At Northeastern, Ed Andrews, Isabel Meirelles, and Russell Pensyl kept me employed (no small thing): Cynthia Baron generously shared her expertise and advice: and Elizabeth Cromley actually read the first edition, which she proved by finding its one typo (minuscule!). I owe much to my students Dwight Roell, Kate Terrado, and Mitch Weiss for their assistance in wrestling various parts of this project to the ground. Fellow lecturers Sophia Ainslie, Julia Hechtman, and Karen Kurczynski make every day plain old fun, while colleague Mary Hughes gently punctures every pretension I throw her way. Department administrator Judy Ulman remains the heart and soul of all we do. But most of all, thanks with deep admiration and affection to Andrea Raynor and Matthew Rich, who school me daily in the ways of hard work, the Red Sox, handicapping throroughbreds, and All Important Things.

Thanks to the reviewers of the last edition: Andrea Marks (University of Oregon), Robert Newman (Savannah College of Art and Design), Liz Resnick (Massachusetts College of Art & Design), and David Smart (University of Plymouth, UK).

Generous students at RISD and Northeastern provided some of the examples that appear in this edition. I have credited them individually where their work appears, but I must thank them all, whether or not they're included in these pages, for giving me the best reason anyone could wish for to get out of bed each morning.

I have leaned too heavily on the goodwill and broad experience of my family and friends. In particular, I remain indebted to my mother, Carole Kane, for her unfailing encouragement and unflinching affection, even after all these years.

Finally...

Some things don't change. Just as with the first edition—in fact, just as with everything I do—the touchstones for this project remain Julie Curtis, David W. Dunlap, Nina Pattek, and my partner, Mark Laughlin. To them, once again, this book is dedicated.

JK

V

Contents

vi

viii Introduction Basics 1 2 Describing letterforms 5 The font Describing typefaces 8 10 Measuring type 12 Comparing typefaces 14 Display typefaces Development 15 16 A timeline 48 Text typeface classification Letters, words, sentences 51 52 Understanding letterforms 56 Maintaining x-height Form/counterform 57 62 Contrast 64 Reinforcing meaning 70 Making sentences, finding sense 80 Type and color 88 English is not Chinese Text 89 90 Tracking: kerning and letterspacing 94 Formatting text 96 Texture 99 Typing is not typesetting 100 Leading and line length 106 Kinds of proportion 114 Components of the text page 116 Placing text on a page 122 Front matter, back matter 124 Indicating paragraphs 126 Highlighting text 132 Headlines within text 136 Widows and orphans

Acknowledgments

Columnar organization	137	
	138	Columnar layouts
	144	Cross-alignment
	146	Expressing hierarchy
	156	Tabular matter
	162	Type as image and information
Grid systems	177	
	178	Introduction
	179	An example
	180	Components of the grid
	188	A simple grid
	194	Grids at large scale
	200	Creating a grid for text
	212	Creating a grid for text and images
	226	Next
	227	Selected bibliography
	228	Index

Introduction

Design is solving problems. Graphic design is solving problems by making marks. Type is a uniquely rich set of marks because it makes language visible. Working successfully with type is essential for effective graphic design.

That said, I can tell you that

this is a practical book.

Over the last 20-odd years teaching typography, I have been unable to find a text that spoke clearly to beginning students about the complex meeting of message. image, and history that is typography. Some of the best history texts are weak in examples; some of the best theoretical texts speak more to the professional than the novice. And no text provides background information to the student in a sequence that supports the basic exercises in any introductory type course. My intention here is to present the basic principles and applications of typography in a way that mirrors what goes on in the classroom and to back up that information with a series of exercises that reinforce the acquired knowledge.

My intent here is to get you, the beginning student of graphic design, to the point where you can understand and demonstrate basic principles of typography. If instinct is the sum of knowledge and experience, this book is an attempt to broaden both in order to strengthen your own typographic instincts.

I should also point out that this is an autodidact's book. What I know about typography Hearned from reading, from practice, and from observation. I was lucky enough to read Emil Ruder first. And I was lucky to work in Boston at a time when dozens of gifted practitioners were trying to solve the same problems I was confronting daily, as we all moved from metal type through photoset type to digital type off our Macs. What Hearned from them was constant application of theory to practice, unflagging respect for the letterform, and a ceaseless search for that moment when the personal met, or at least approached, the platonic.

Paul Rand once wrote: 'Typography is an art. Good typography is Art, and therein lies the problem for both teacher and student. Craft can be taught. Art lies within the individual. Many beginning students are frustrated by the fact that there are no hard and fast rules in typography, no foolproof map to success. The pedagogic difficulty is that type has a system of principles, based on experience, and those principles keep evolving as language and media evolve. Countless times, students have asked, 'ls this right?' when in fact there is no such thing in typography as 'right' The question they should be asking themselves is, 'Does this work? Is it useful?' Designers use type as a response to a message, to an audience, to a medium. The only way to recognize successful typography is through informed, direct observation. It takes time, trial, and error to know what works and to lose anxiety over what may or may not seem 'right'

If you work through the examples in this book for yourself, you should have enough experience to test your own ideas in typographic applications. After all, it is what each designer brings to a project-the sum of what he or she knows and feels, his or her unique experiencethat guarantees that variety, excitement, and, occasionally, brilliance will continue to enliven typographic design. This book is not about style-a characteristic expression of attitude - so much as a clear-headed way of thinking and making. Style belongs to the individual; delight in thinking and making can be shared by everyone.

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most 20th-century art:

Content dictates form. Less is more. God is in the details.*

These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of craft.

viii

The first idea is a variation of architect Louis Sullivan's famous dictate, "Form ever follows function." The second, although popularized by architect Ludwig Mies van der Rohe, was first articulated by Robert Browning in 'Andrea del Serto,' 1855 (and, in fact, the idea has existed in literature since Hesiod's 'Works and Days' (700 B.C.E.), in which he writes 'They do not even know how much more is the half than the whole.') The third, although attributed to architect Louis Kahn, has no source that I have been able to uncover.

The basic thinking behind this book comes out of two simple observations. First,

type is physical.

Until quite recently, any study of type would necessarily begin by handsetting metal type. There is still no better way to understand the absolute physicality of the letterform-its 'thingness.' With each passing day, however, working with metal type becomes less and less possible. To approximate the experience of handling type, there are examples in this book that require careful hand-rendering of letterforms. (I've suggested these exercises primarily for readers who don't have, as I did not, the benefit of a classroom experience. They are not intended to supplant working with a capable instructor, although I certainly hope that they can enhance that process.) These exercises not only help you hone your hand/eye coordination, but also help you develop a typographic sensibility. You cannot achieve this sensibility merely by looking and thinking. The only way to appreciate the reality of type is first to make your own.

The second observation, particularly in terms of text type, is that

type evolved from handwriting.

While there are any number of things you can do with text type (particularly on a computer), your work will have the most integrity when what you do reflects the same impulse that leads us all to put pen to paper — effective, direct, useful communication.

Particularly in later examples, I have assumed that people using this book have a working familiarity with Adobe Illustrator and Quark Xpress or Adobe InDesign. You should also have at least one font from each of the classifications described on pages 48–50; in fact, you could do a lot worse than to choose the ten typefaces highlighted on page 12. They provide a rock-solid foundation for any typographic design problems you may encounter in the future.

I've used numerous examples to demonstrate the points I raise because one of the joys of working with type is that you can see immediately what is successful and what isn't (for that same reason I've tried to keep text to a minimum). I have designed almost every example in this book to reflect what was, and still is, possible on a simple type press. I've kept these examples as simple as possible for two reasons: 'simple' is deceptively difficult (and, in typography, often desirable); and, as I said earlier, this book is about intent and content, not effect or style.

This second edition incorporates many additions and amendments to the first; perhaps the most significant is the companion website (www.atvpeprimer.com), There you will find examples of student work, discussions of best typographic practice for the web, recommendations for a strong typeface library, links to typographic resources, and other timely topics. I consider the website a logical extension of the material in this book, and I encourage you to refer to it often. Perhaps the most surprising discovery I've made since the first edition is the direct correspondence between good print typography and good web typography. I hope that this book's website clearly demonstrates how the principles in print translate to the screen.

The sequence of examples in this book is built to demonstrate that the character and legibility of type only exist in the context of voidswhat type designer Cyrus Highsmith describes as 'where type isn't.' A serious typographer constantly monitors and manipulates the relationship of form (where type is) to counterform (where it isn't). To understand this relationship, it is essential to see type as a progression of spaces (right). Changing any one space immediately alters its relationship with all the other spaces. Those of you familiar with Gestalt Principles will doubtless find similarity to the concepts of contiquity. continuity, and closure. I conclude the introduction with this observation because it is central to all good typography and because it offers us an ideal point from which to start. As you go through this book, keep in mind how the spaces operate, both in the examples shown and in the pages themselves.



The space inside the form



slip the

ıl deed

The space between forms



The space between words

paused before a l door, from which see the whole of This room wa by Dantes' father The space between lines

door, from which see the whole of

This room was or by Dantes' father

The space between paragraphs

der is already dows, over each icipal cities of d although the l with impatient onal friends of ler to do greater

end the nuptial

The feast had familiar. The ap of which was wr France; beneath entertainment w and expectant go the bride-groon honor to the occ Various rumo

Various rumo feast; but all see

The space between columns of text

The tests had been made ready on the second floor at La which was written in golden letters for some inexplicable reentertainment was fixed for twelve o'clock, an hour previothe bride-groom, the whole of whom had arrayed themselv Various rumors were afloat to the effect that the owners be intended.

Danglars, however, who now made his appearance, according at La Reserve.

In fact, a moment later M. Morrel appeared and was salu feast he thus delighted to honor would ere long be first in a choice of their superiors so exactly coincided with their ow With the entrance of M. Morrel, Danglars and Caderous

Danglars and Caderousse set off upon their errand at ful the bride, by whose side walked Dantes' father; the whole l

The space between text and the edge of the page

Basics

Describing letterforms

As with any craft that has evolved over 500 years, typography employs a number of technical terms. These mostly describe specific parts of letterforms. It is a good idea to familiarize yourself with this lexicon. Knowing a letterform's component parts makes it much easier to identify specific typefaces.

(In the entries that follow, **boldface** texts denote terms described elsewhere in the list.)



Stroke

Any line that defines the basic letterform.



Apex/Vertex

The point created by joining two diagonal **stems** (apex above, **vertex** below).



Arm

Short **strokes** off the **stem** of the letterform, either horizontal (E, F, T) or inclined upward (K, Y).



Ascender

The portion of the **stem** of a lowercase letterform that projects above the **median**.



Barb

The half-**serif** finish on some curved **strokes**.

Baseline

The imaginary line defining the visual base of letterforms (see the diagram below).

Median

The imaginary line defining the **x-height** of letterforms (see the diagram below).

X-height

The height in any typeface of the lowercase 'x' (see the diagram below).

ascender height cap height

median

baseline

descender height





Beak

The half-**serif** finish on some horizontal **arms.**



Rowl

The rounded form that describes a **counter.** The bowl may be either open or closed.



Bracket

The transition between the **serif** and the **stem**.



Counter

The negative space within a letterform, either fully or partially enclosed.



Cross Bar

The horizontal **stroke** in a letterform that joins two **stems** together.



Cross Stroke

The horizontal **stroke** in a letterform that intersects the **stem.**



Crotch

The interior space where two **strokes** meet.



Descender

That portion of the **stem** of a lowercase letterform that projects below the **baseline**.



Far

The **stroke** extending out from the main **stem** or body of the letterform.



Em/en

Originally referring to the width of an uppercase M, an **em** is now the distance equal to the size of the typeface (an **em** in 48 pt. type is 48 points, for example). An **en** is half the size of an **em**. Most often used to describe em/en spaces and em/en dashes.



Finial

The rounded non-serif terminal to a stroke.



Lea

Short **strokes** off the **stem** of the letterform, either at the bottom of the stroke (L) or inclined downward (K, R).



Ligature

The character formed by the combination of two or more letterforms.



Shoulder

The curved stroke that is not part of a bowl.



Stress

The orientation of the letterform, indicated by the thin stroke in round forms.

The curved stem of the S.

Swash

The flourish that extends the stroke of a letterform.

Spur

Spine

The extension that articulates the junction of a curved and rectilinear stroke.



The curved or diagonal stroke at the finish of certain letterforms.

The significant vertical or oblique stroke.



Terminal

The self-contained finish of a stroke without a serif. This is something of a catch-all term. Terminals may be flat ('T', above), flared, acute, (tt, above), grave, concave, convex, or rounded as a ball or a teardrop (see finial).

Link

The stroke that connects the bowl and the loop of a lowercase G.

Loop

In some typefaces, the bowl created in the descender of the lowercase G.



The right-angled or oblique foot at the end of the stroke.

The full font of a typeface contains much more than 26 letters, 10 numerals, and a few punctuation marks. To work successfully with type, you should make sure that you are working with a full font and you should know how to use it.

Uppercase

Capital letters, including certain accented vowels, the c cedilla (c) and n tilde (ñ), and the a/e and o/e ligatures (æ, œ).

AÅÂÄÄÄÆBCÇDEÉ ÈÊËFGHIÌÍÎÏJKLMN OÓÒÔÖØŒPQRS TUÚÙÛÜVWXYZ

Lowercase

Lowercase letters include the same characters as uppercase plus f/i, f/l, f/f, f/f/i, and f/f/l ligatures, and the 'esset' (German double s).

aáàâäåãæbcçdeéèêë ffiflffffifflghiïîìíjklmnñ oóòôöøœpqrsß tuüûùúvwxyz

Small capitals

Uppercase letterforms, drawn to the x-height of the typeface. Small caps are primarily found in serif fonts. Most type software includes a style command that generates a small cap based upon uppercase forms. Do not confuse real small caps with those generated artificially.

AÁÀÂÄÄÄÆBCÇDEÉÈÊË FGHIÍÌÎÏJKLMNÑ OØÓÒÔÖŒPQRSŠ TUÚÙÛÜVWXYÝZŽ

Aa Baskerville small cap artificially generated A a
Baskerville
small cap
from the
font

Typeface shown: Monotype Baskerville

6 Uppercase numerals

Also called lining figures, these numerals are the same height as uppercase letters and are all set to the same kerning width. They are most successfully used with tabular material or in any situation that calls for uppercase letters.

1234567890

Lowercase numerals

Also called oldstyle figures or text figures, these numerals are set to x-height with ascenders and descenders. They are best used wherever you would use upper- and lowercase letterforms. Lowercase numerals are far less common in sans serif than in serif typefaces.

1234567890

Italic

Most fonts today are produced with a matching italic. Small caps, however, are almost always only roman. As with small caps, artificially generated italics are not the same as real italics.

Note the difference below between a 'true' italic and what is called an 'oblique.' The forms in a true italic refer back to 15th-century Italian cursive handwriting. Obliques are typically based on the roman form of the typeface. Contemporary typefaces often blur the distinction between italic and oblique, but you should be aware of the differences.

aa Baskerville roman with Italic

Univers 55 (roman) with Univers 56 (oblique) AÅÂÄÄÄÄÆBCÇD
EËÊÈÉFGHIÏÎÌÍJKLM
NÑOØÖÔÒÓŒPQRST
UÜÛÙÚVWXYZ
1234567890
aåâäàáãæbcçdeëêèéffiflff
ffifflghiïîìíjklmnñoøöôòóœ
pqrsßtuüûùúvwxyz
1234567890

Punctuation,

miscellaneous characters

Although all fonts contain standard punctuation marks, miscellaneous characters can change from type-face to typeface. It's important to be acquainted with all the characters available in a typeface before you choose the appropriate type for a particular job.

!*---_() { } [] """: :,; ...
/?; †‡§ <> «»¶ & #\$ \$ ¢ £ ¥

TM © ® @ a o m <> + ± =

÷ • ° Ð ð Þ þ
$$f$$
 · ° ¬ μ / ~ ″ 1
% % % 1/8 1/4 1/3 3/8 1/2 5/8 2/3 3/4 7/8

Dingbats

Various symbols and ornaments that are intended for use with type are called dingbats. The majority of dingbats are marketed as their own fonts and not in conjunction with any particular typeface.

Roman

Once you can recognize the parts of the letterform, you can apply what you know to identify different typefaces. Beyond the characteristic gestures of a typeface, however, there are also style applications that you should recognize. Keep in mind that some, all, or combinations of these styles may be found within one type family.

Roman The basic letterform style, so called because the uppercase forms are derived from inscriptions on Roman monuments. When used to describe a type style, the term 'roman' is always lowercase. In some typefaces, a slightly lighter stroke than roman is called 'book'.

Italic **Boldface**

Italic

Named for 15th-century Italian handwriting on which the forms were based. (See page 6 for a description of 'oblique'.)

Boldface

Characterized by a thicker stroke than the roman form. Depending upon the relative stroke widths within the typeface, it can also be called 'semibold,' 'medium,' 'black,' 'extra bold,' or 'super.' In some typefaces (notably Bodoni), the boldest rendition of the typeface is referred to as 'poster!

Light Condensed

A lighter stroke than the roman form. Even lighter strokes are often called 'thin'

Condensed

As the name suggests, a condensed version of the roman form. Extremely condensed styles are often called 'compressed!

Extended

Exactly what you would think. An extended variation on the roman forms.

Extended

The confusion of styles within families of typefaces may seem daunting to the novice; it certainly remains a small nuisance even to the experienced designer. The only way to deal with the profusion of names—like learning irregular verbs in French—is memorization. See page 44 for Adrian Frutiger's attempt to resolve the naming problem.

Adobe Caslon SemiBold
Akzidenz Grotesk Regular
Akzidenz Grotesk Medium
Bodoni Old Face Medium
Futura Book
Helvetica Compressed
Gill Sans Heavy
Gill Sans Extra Bold
Gill Sans Ultra Bold
Grotesque Black
Meta Normal
Univers Thin Ultra Condensed (Univers 39)

Measuring type

10

Along with its own lexicon, typography also has its own units of measurement. Originally, type size was determined by the height of actual pieces of lead type. Obviously, we no longer commonly use lead type in setting type; however, the concept of letterforms cast on small pieces of lead remains the most useful way of thinking of type size. Although type size originally referred to the body of the type (the metal slug on which the letterform was cast), today we typically measure it from the top of the ascender to the bottom of the descender.

Similarly, the space between lines of type is called 'leading' because it was originally strips of lead placed between lines of metal type.

We calculate the size of type with units called 'points.' A point as we use it now is 1/72 of an inch or .35mm. The 'pica,' also used extensively in printing, is made up of twelve points. There are six picas to an inch.

When writing out a dimension in picas and points, the standard abbreviation is **p.**

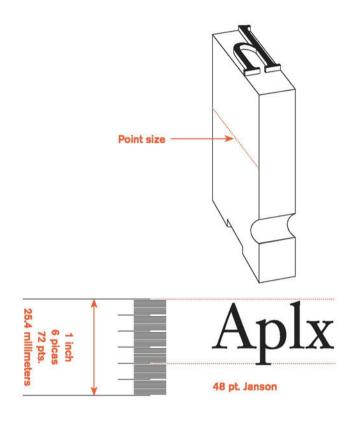
6 picas is written 6p or 6p0

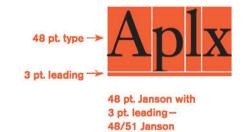
6 picas, 7 points is written 6p7

7 points is written 7 pts., 0p7, or p7

When specifying type size and leading, use a slash between the two numbers.

10 pt Univers with 2 pt leading is written 10/12 Univers

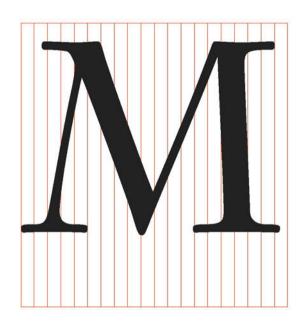


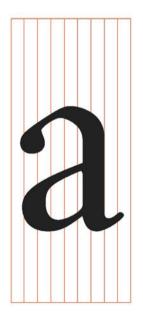


Set width

All letterforms have set widths: the width of the form itself plus the space required on either side to prevent one letter from bumping into another. Set widths are described in **units**, an entirely arbitrary measure that changes from one system to another. In the example opposite, the uppercase M (typically the widest letterform) is 20 units wide and the lowercase a is 9 units wide; the measurements might just as easily be 40 units and 18 units.

When type was cast by hand, it was possible for every letter, upper- and lowercase, to have a unique set width. As mechanized typesetting evolved, type designers were forced to restrict the number of set widths in any typeface to accommodate the limitations of the system (metal or photo) that produced the type. An 'a' and an 'e', for instance, might be assigned the same set width in some systems because the technology wasn't able to express finer distinctions. Current digital technology has gone a long way toward restoring the variety of handcast type. Many softwares work at a scale of 200 units to the set width of an M.





1,234,567.00 450,118.19

1,234,567.00 450,118.19

Traditionally, uppercase numerals had identical set widths so that they would align vertically (above). Lowercase numerals, designed with varying set widths, did not. For many typefaces, Open Type has removed these distinctions.

Comparing typefaces

Image, history, and meaning meet in every aspect of typography, even the simplest of letterforms.

The ten typefaces displayed opposite represent 500 years of type design. The men and women who rendered them all sought to achieve two goals: easy readability and an appropriate expression of contemporary esthetics. These typefaces (and there are others) have surpassed the latter goal. They have remained in use for decades—in some cases, centuries—after they were first designed, still considered successful expressions of how we think, how we read and write, and how we print.

As a beginning typographer, you should study these ten faces carefully. For any of the exercises in this book—and for almost any early projects—these are all you need to develop your skills. Once you understand how to use these faces appropriately and effectively, you'll be well prepared to understand and appreciate other typefaces as you encounter them.

Most of the typefaces shown here are fully displayed in the chapter on Development, pages 15-50.

Radiography

Garamond Radiography

Radiography

Radiography

Baskerville Radiography

Radiography

Radiography

Radiography

Radiography

Radiography

As you study other designers' work, you'll notice that many people who work seriously with type employ a limited palette of typefaces. Some, in fact, go through their entire careers using only one or two.

For our purposes, what is worth noting is not the similarities among these typefaces, but their differences—the accumulation of choices that renders each unique. Compare, for example, different forms of the lowercase 'a':

a a a a a a a a a

Beyond the gross differences in x-height, these forms display a wealth of variety in line weight, relative stroke width and other internal relationships, and in feeling. For any good typographer, each of these feelings connotes specific applications determined by use and expression. In other words, the type-faces suggest applications for which they are appropriate.

As Eric Gill said, letters are things, they are not pictures of things. While the generic letter 'A' may indicate a variety of sounds, the lowercase 'a' as rendered in Bembo is a specific character, different in form and sensibility from the lowercase 'a' rendered in Bauer Bodoni, Serifa 55, Helvetica, or Futura. All five convey the idea of 'A'; each presents a unique esthetic.

RRRRRRRR

The uppercase R (above) displays the range of attitude typefaces are capable of conveying. If you examine these forms long enough, you are bound to decide that some of the tails seem more whimsical, some more stately; some will appear more mechanical, some more calligraphic, some harmonious, some awkward. As much as anything, what this examination tells you is how you feel about type and specific typefaces. It tells you what you bring to the discussion of appropriateness in type choices.

Display typefaces

For the bulk of this book, the typefaces that we're investigating have been designed as **text type**—that is, type intended primarily for presentation at between 6 pt. and 12 pt. Type presented at 18 pt. and above, for headlines or call-outs, is referred to as **display type**. Typefaces designed exclusively for use in display easily account for the majority of fonts produced today.

It's easy to understand the popularity of display typefaces. As these examples (right) demonstrate, they carry with them an endless variety of character, personality, history, and style. Experienced typographers use them to add spice to an already balanced composition. Neophytes, sadly, too often rely on them to give voice to what is otherwise irredeemably shapeless and bland.

The very characteristics that make display typefaces attractive at large scale—extreme compression or extension of form, unusually large or small counterforms, complex details, strong pictorial references—make them unsuitable at text sizes (bottom right). Keep in mind that display typefaces are meant to be 'seen' more than 'read!

Top to bottom:
Bifur
Broadway
Brush Script
Cooper Black
Futura Black
Goudy Text
Haettenschweiler
Hobo
Kaufmann
Mistral
Onyx
Pelgnot
Playbill
Runic

HAMBURUS Hamburgs

Hamburgs Hamburgs Hamburgs

Lamburgs Hamburgs

Hamburgs Hamburgs

Hamburgs
Hamburgs
Hamburgs
Hamburgs
Hamburgs
Hamburgs

HAMBURES
Hamburgs

Hamburgs

Development

An alphabet is a series of culturally agreed upon marks-letters-that represent specific sounds. Before the Phœnicians (a seafaring mercantile group living in currentday Lebanon) developed an alphabet around 1500 B.C.E., written language had depicted entire words at a time. The picture of a bull meant a bull. independent of its pronunciation. Being able to write-to document speech - meant knowing the thousands of marks that represented all the things in the known world. By developing a system dependent upon sound ('ah') and not object (bull) or concept (love), the Phœnicians were able to capture language with 20 marks instead of hundreds or thousands. Writingcuneiforms, hieroglyphs-had been practiced for several millennia before the Phœnicians developed their set of marks, but, for our purpose-the study of letterforms - in the beginning was the alphabet.

The word 'alphabet' is a compression of the first two letters of the Greek alphabet: alpha and beta. By 800 B.C.E., the Greeks had adapted the 20 letters from the Phœnician alphabet, changing the shape and sound of some letters. (The Phœnician alphabet is also the forerunner of modernday Hebrew and Arabic, but our focus is on its European evolution.)

On the Italian peninsula, first the Etruscans and then the Romans appropriated the Greek alphabet for their own use. The Romans changed the forms of several Greek letters and, on their own, added the letters G, Y, and Z. As Rome's influence spread throughout Europe, Asia Minor, and northern Africa, so too did the Roman alphabet—and Roman letterforms.

Early letterform development: Phœnician to Roman

4th century B.C.E. Phœnician votive stele Carthage, Tunisia

The stele bears a four-line inscription to Tanit and Baal Hammon.



Initially, writing meant scratching into wet clay with a sharpened stick or carving into stone with a chisel. The forms of uppercase letterforms (for nearly 2,000 years the only letterforms) can be seen to have evolved out of these tools and materials. At their core, uppercase forms are a simple combination of straight lines and pieces of circles, as the materials and tools of early writing required. Each form stands on its own. This epigraphic (inscriptional) or lapidary (engraved in stone) quality differentiates upperfrom lowercase forms.

The evolution of the letterform 'A':





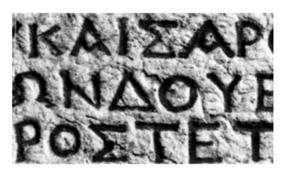
Greek 900 B.C.E.



The alphabet moved from Phœnicia through Greece to Rome, then throughout the Roman empire.



Date unknown Greek fragment Stone engraving Late 1st century B.C.E. Augustan inscription in the Roman Forum Rome



The Greeks changed the direction of writing. Phœnicians, like other Semitic peoples, wrote from right to left. The Greeks developed a style of writing called *boustrophedon*, ('how the ox ploughs'), which meant that lines of text read alternately from right to left and left to right.

As they changed the direction of reading, the Greeks also changed the orientation of the letterforms, like this:

ASTHEYCHANGEDTHEDIRECTIO PARADOZJAYJATTONOCTHELETTE EDTHEORIENTATIONOFTHELETTE

(Note: the Greeks, like the Phœnicians, did not use letterspaces or punctuation.) Subsequently, the Greeks moved to a strictly left-toright direction for writing.



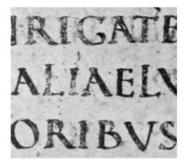
Etruscan (and then Roman) carvers working in marble painted letter-forms before inscribing them. Certain qualities of their strokes—a change in weight from vertical to horizontal, a broadening of stroke at start and finish—carried over into the carved forms.

Not all early writing was scratched in clay or carved in stone. Business contracts, correspondence, even love songs required a medium that was less formal and less cumbersome than stone allowed for. From 2400 B.C.E., scribes throughout the eastern Mediterranean employed a wedge-shaped brush and papyrus for writing. Papyrus was made from a bamboo-like plant that grew in the Nile Valley. The plant's inner fibers were pulped, then flattened and dried under heavy weights.

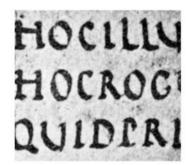
Despite its relative ease of use, papyrus had several drawbacks. It could not be written on on both sides, and it was too brittle to be folded. Its main drawback, however, was its single source—Egypt. Availability was limited not only to the size of the papyrus crop from year to year, but also to the Pharaoh's willingness to trade.

Ephemeral communication—notes, calculations, simple transactions—were often scratched out on wax panels framed in wood. When the communication had served its purpose, the wax could be smoothed out for subsequent use. This practice continued into the Middle Ages.

4th or 5th century Square capitals Late 3rd to mid-4th century Rustic capitals 4th century Roman cursive



Square capitals were the written version of the lapidary capitals that can be found on Roman monuments. Like their epigraphic models, these letterforms have serifs added to the finish of the main strokes. The variety of stroke width was achieved by the use of a reed pen held at an angle of approximately 60° off the perpendicular.



A compressed version of square capitals, rustic capitals allowed for twice as many words on a sheet of parchment and took far less time to write. The pen or brush was held at an angle of 30° off the perpendicular. Although rustic capitals were faster and easier to write than their square counterparts, they were slightly harder to read because of the compressed nature of the forms.



Both square and rustic capitals were typically reserved for documents of some intended permanence. Everyday transactions, however, were typically written with a cursive hand, in which forms were simplified for speed. We can see here the beginning of what we now refer to as lowercase letterforms.

By 150 B.C.E., parchment had replaced papyrus as the writing surface of choice. Most famously manufactured in Pergamum (from which the word is derived), parchment was made from the treated skins of sheeps and goats (vellum—a particularly fine version of parchment—was made from the skins of newborn calves). Unlike papyrus, parchment could be written on on both sides and folded without cracking. Its harder surface also stood up to a hard-nibbed reed pen, which in turn allowed for smaller writing.

Paper was invented in China in 105 c.E. by Ts'ai Lun, a court eunuch, who made a pulp of various available fibers, which he then spread over a piece of cloth and allowed to dry. His contemporaries (and those who followed) used a brush to 'paint' characters on the resulting, rather rough, sheet. Over time, the drying cloth was replaced by a dense screen of thin strips of bamboo. The technique did not reach Europe for 900 years.

Papermaking spread to Japan in the 7th century, to Samarkand (now Uzbekhistan) in the 8th, and then, via the Moors, to Spain, where papermaking was practiced around 1000 c.E. A paper mill (or factory), using water-powered machines to pulp linen fiber and fine screens to produce smooth, flexible sheets, was operating in Fabriano, Italy by 1300. The process spread quickly through Europe. By 1600, more than 16,000 paper mills were in operation.





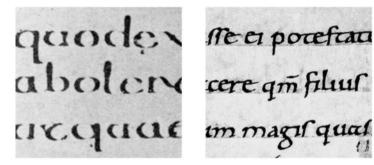
Abbey Church of Sainte-Foy Conques, France Late 10th-11th century

4th-5th century Uncials

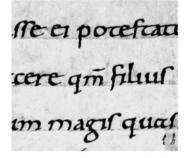
c. 500 Half-uncials 925 Caroline minuscule



Uncials incorporated some aspects of the Roman cursive hand, especially in the shape of the A. D. E. H. M, U, and Q. 'Uncia' is Latin for a twelfth of anything; as a result some scholars think that uncials refer to letters that are one inch (one twelfth of a foot) high. It might, however, be more accurate to think of uncials simply as small letters. The point for the scribe, after all, was to save expensive parchment, and the broad forms of uncials are more readable at small sizes than rustic capitals.



A further formalization of the cursive hand, half-uncials mark the formal beginning of lowercase letterforms. replete with ascenders and descenders. 2,000 years after the original Phœnician alphabet. Due to the political and social upheaval on the European continent at the time, the finest examples of half-uncials come from manuscripts produced in Ireland and England.



Charlemagne, the first unifier of Europe since the Romans, issued an edict in 789 to standardize all ecclesiastical texts. He entrusted this task to Alcuin of York, Abbot of St. Martin of Tours from 796 to 804, under whose supervision a large group of monks rewrote virtually all the ecclesiastical and, subsequently, secular texts then in existence. Their 'print'-including both majuscules (upper case) and minuscules (lower case) - set the standard for calligraphy for a century, including capitalization and punctuation.

Roman numerals, used in the 1st millennium throughout Europe, matched seven Roman letters.

XLCDM 5 10 50 100 500 1000

With the development of lowercase letterforms, the numerals came to be written in lowercase as well.

c d m 10 50 100 500 1000 What we call Arabic numerals originated in India between 1,500 and 2,000 years ago. Our first evidence of their use in Arabic is from an Indian astronomical table, translated in Baghdad around 800 c.E. Arab scribes referred to them as Hindu figures, and they looked like this (remember, Arabic reads from right to left):

987W452I

As with papermaking, use of Arabic numerals spread from Moorish Spain to Europe around 1000 C.E. The numerals were quickly adopted by merchants and scientists, not only because of their legibility but, significantly, because they brought with them the Hindu concept of zero, which allowed for decimals and place value. Compare:

1000 and

Blackletter to Gutenberg's type



c. 900 Blackletter (Textura) 1455
42-line bible
Johann Gutenberg
Mainz
(below [detail] and opposite)

yvin consisti vin usa peca tv:' ov in cath vie non sedit

With the dissolution of Charlemagne's empire came regional variations upon Alcuin's script. In northern Europe, a condensed, strongly vertical letterform known as black-letter or textura (for the woven effect it produced on a page of text) gained popularity. In the south, a rounder, more open hand, called 'rotunda,' prevailed. In northern France, England, and the Low Countries, a hybrid of the two, called batarde, was predominant. In the north, the blackletter style remained the standard for almost 500 years.

In the south, particularly in Italy, scholars were rediscovering, analyzing, and popularizing Roman and Greek texts. Their sources were written in Alcuin's Caroline minuscule, which they mistakenly believed to be that of the ancient authors. Scribes adapted the rotunda style to the Caroline as they copied the manuscripts, calling it 'scrittura humanistica'—humanist script.

We know that Johann Gutenberg did not singlehandedly invent type-casting or printing, but what little we know of him—mostly from court documents describing a lifetime of unpaid debts—is a good deal more than what we know of his few contemporaries. We do know that his achievement has endured, and so he is central to the development of type.

Born in Mainz in 1397, Gutenberg moved in 1428 to Strasbourg, where he worked as a goldsmith. Printing at that time-and it was a new idea in Europe - consisted of burnishing a piece of paper against a carved, inked block of wood. By 1436 he had begun experimenting with a new technology-an adjustable mold system for 'casting' movable, re-usable type from molten lead. In 1438 he designed his first press, based on the grape press used in winemaking. Along the way he developed an ink that had enough tack to stick to his metal type. By 1448 he had returned to Mainz and borrowed 150 gulden from a relative to set up shop.

By 1455, a subsequent mortgage from merchant Johann Fust had, with interest, reached 2,000 gulden. When Fust foreclosed, Gutenberg had to forfeit all his equipment—including his work in progress, the 42-line bible. Fust and his son-in-law Peter Schöffer finished production on the bible and sold it for a handsome profit. Fust and Shöffer continued printing and publishing with great success. Fust died in 1466. Gutenberg died penniless two years later. At Schöffer's death in 1502, his son Johann took over the business.

puli iuxta id qd iuccūt. Dixing; a relinquat et i idiccūt eū: led d lo: mane: er lia

Gutenberg's skills included engineering, metalsmithing, and chemistry. He marshaled them all to build pages that accurately mimicked the work of the scribe's hand. For his letterforms, Gutenberg referred to what was known in his time and place-the blackletter of northern Europe. His type mold required a different brass matrix, or negative impression, for each letterform. Because he wanted his type to resemble handwriting as closely as possible, he eventually worked with 270 different matrices. including variants of individual letterforms and numerous ligatures.

20

verle lunt. Ibi röflituit ei prepta atgiudicia: et ibi tempranit eu dicens. Bi audicia voramdini dei tui-et qd redu eft rozam eo fercis-et obdiccia māda-tis ei?-cultodiccilg; orifia prepta illi?: cundulangore que polui i egipto no inducă luper et. Ego eni lum domin? tus laluator. Cenerur aute in pelim felii ifrabel: obi etant duotecim fonte aquarum a leptuaginta palme: et ca-

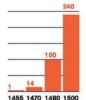
Gramman lunt iuxta aquas XVI rofedige de belim venie omnie multitude filies ifri in beletum Tru-nd ett inter klim a finai: quintate rima die mentio fecundi with great lut de ita egipti. Et murmurauit ois romegano filion ifri-roma morten et aaron in folicubine. Dixerunto: filii ilri ad cos. Unina momii ellemo per manu dui ira egiph: quado feetam? fun ollae rarniu-a comertam? nane i faturitate. Lur înduxistie noe în de ferriflud:ut acciderais amus miritus dine fame! Dirit auten die ad moylen. Ece ego plua vobie mues de elo. Egrediat mis er rolligar q fufficiunt pr lingulos dies:ur tempre eu-virum ambuler in lege mea-an non. Die auran legro parer quod inferant: 4 lit duplum quam colligere foletar p finguloe dies. Dixerum; mortes a aaron ad omes filios ilri. Velpere literis m doming eduxerit une de tra egipri:er mane videbîne gloria dominî. Audini mi murnur velku ontra dim. Mos vero go fund: quia inulitaltis rotta nos frait morles. Dabit nobie die velvere carnes edere-et mane pante i faturitate: co m audituit murmurationes veltras quibs murmuran eltie coma cu. Aloe em ad lum? Mec contra nos est murmur peltru:

led contra dominu. Dixit quon; morles ad aaron. Die uniule conrectaris onifilion ild. Accoin cora domino. Audinie eni murmur veltru. Lun: looveret aaron-ad omné rerum filion ifri:respererut ad folitudinum. Et ecce gloria dni amaruit in nule. Locum elt auci doming ad morlen dice. Audiui murmuradones filiorū ilri. loque ad eos. Velpre cometens carnes: a mane laturabimini paniba laidila: m ego lum doming deus velter. Fadü elt erap velvere a alændés commix roorruit callra:mant quod; ros iaquit per circuită caltron. Lug: opeuillet luperficiem terre: amaruit in folitudine minuri-et quali pilo tulum în librudinen prume fuper tetra. Quod cu vidiffent filififrahel: direcunt ad inuice. Manhus Quod fronificar. Quid eft hor Touoralant eni go ellet. Quibs ait mortes. Afte eft panie que due de die vobie ad velcendu. Die elt fermo que previr vobie dne. Collinar unulquilg et to quam lufficit-ad velcedu: nomor p lungla capita. Juxta numerum animar veltrar q habitat in tabruado: lic rollens. Ferrung ita filij ild:a collegaut-alius plus alius minue:4 menti lut ad mentura gomo: Mec à phis collegerat-habuit amplius:nec à min9 paraueat-reprit min9: fed finguli iurta id ad edere porerant rögregauerüt. Dixing moyles ad eos. Mullus reinquater co i mane. Dui non audierüt eü: led dimilerüt guida er eie ula; mane: er tratere repit úmib3ang computair. Et irat? i waa we morles. Colligebant aute mane-finquli:quātū lufficere poterat ad velcendum. Lüng incaluiller fol:liquefieter. In die auton ferta-collegerunt abox

22

Humanist script to roman type

European cities with printing offices, 1455–1500



By 1500 there were 1,000 printing offices in 240 cities in Europe. 12,000,000 printed copies of 35,000 books were in distribution, more than all the books hand-copied in the previous one and a half millennia.

c. 1460
Lucius Lactantius
De Divinis Institutionibus

In 1462, the city of Mainz was ransacked by troops of the Archbishop of Nassau. Printers—many of whom had come from other countries to learn the new technology—spread back out across Europe in search of safer havens for the practice of their craft.

In 1465, two German printers—
Conrad Sweynheym, who had
clerked for Schöffer in Mainz, and
Arnold Pannartz—established a
press at the Benedictine monastery
in Subiaco, some 31 miles (50 km)
east of Rome. After printing just four
books, they moved their press to the
Palazzo de' Massimi in Rome, where
they worked until 1473. Just as
Gutenberg cast his type to mimic the
prevailing writing style in the north,
Sweynheym and Pannartz cast their
type to match the Italian calligraphic
hand—humanist script.

In 1469, German Johannes da Spira set up the first press in Venice. His type, too, reflected humanist script, but it displayed a regularity of tone that far exceeded the work of Sweynheym and Pannartz. Da Spira died in 1470, and his press was taken over by Nicholas Jenson, a Frenchman who had gone to Mainz in 1458 to learn type-casting and printing and who is believed to have cast da Spira's original type. Whether he did or not, in his own work until his death in 1480 Jenson effectively codified the esthetics of type for those who followed.

gura homuns & condicione mortali & ci ma gulteno fundus fiuller tradcretur imanus un pionum morteneg: susciperer ut ea quoq:piurtutem domita resurgerer & bonum quem i duerat quem octebat es spem unicende mortal offerret & ad premia imortalitans admit teret bane ergo dispositi ne quis ignoret do cebunus predista esse omnia que in xpo inde mus esse completa Nemo asseurationi noshe sidem comodet usis ostendero prophetas an re multam reruporum seriem predicasse sore multam reruporum seriem predicasse sore unitam reruporum seriem predicasse sone un aliqui filius da nasserem sunt somo & un

rabilia faccret. « cultum dei protam terram

Commarce & politemo panbulo floretur &

terria die resurgeret que omma cii probauero

pore utentem molanerunt-quid aluid obita

but quo minuf faprentiam tieram clarum fir

inbac fold religione uterlari. Nunc aprintipio tottus saturniti origo narianda est. Maiors arti qui erant principes bebreorum cum ste

relitate atq: mopta laboratent transferintm

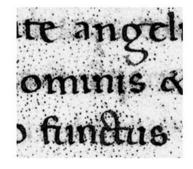
egyptum in fiumentarie gracia ibiq diutiuf

commorantes intollerabili ferutunt iugo pre

mebanuir Tum muferrus coru deus educat

cos ac liberauit demanii reors coppuoru post

These three pages (above and opposite, with details below), produced within around ten years of each other, demonstrate the transition from humanist script to roman type in Italy. Nicholas Jenson's accomplishment—in terms of both craft and form—is all the more vivid when compared to the contemporary work of Sweynheym and Pannartz.



-

murtute angeli aut pocellate celetti fed infi

Some early printing offices, by date

1461 Bamberg 1462 Strasbourg 1465 Subiaco 1466 Cologne

1468 Augsburg 1469 Venice

1470 Paris Toulouse 1473 Lyons Utrecht

1474 Valencia 1475 Bruges 1476 London 1477 Delft

1472 Cardinal Johannes Bessarion Adversus Calumniatorem Platonis Conrad Sweynheim and Arnold Pannartz, Subiaco Press, Rome

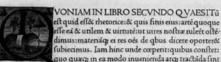
1471 Quintilian Institutiones Oratoriae Nicholas Jenson Venice

231 --

ung traxerit pter aduerlarid Nunc et d'argumenta aggredior : et quonta nephandi amorti crimé in primit Platoni obiteti quel id rationibul oftedere conetur:post indebimus. Nunc de amore aliquid differamuf. Equidem non if fumqui neminë und incidife in amoref illicicof.ac per libidinem fæluf cómifife existimë. Neq ení negari pocest pluref ex omni natióe excitife natura puerfa et deprauati moribui qui non animol fed corpora manú amáte initar corú qui ut Plato inquit fructul appetit. Quippe et apo-ftolul Paulul i epistola qua ad romãol kribit: col nefadi amors arguit. & Plato non line caula idiplú & reprebendit & lege uctat. Sed illud animaduertendú est: non omnem amorem uitiolum es ac cur pe: sed quéadmodú pleraq: alsa cómuns nomine appellata: ne eadem usa eodem ue afflatu animof bominum incendere sed alterum ut nimif pueriliter fentientem nulla ratione regi ac infi/ pietum folummodo animifinfidere:libidinifarq luxurie comité: impudentem: scelestum: ad id quod male appetit temere ructem. Alterum bonestum: modestum: uerecundú: constantem: sanctú: beatil: castitatificontinentieq custodem benigne animis affianté & amanté observantemo urtutifitaq cum unu amorif sit nomé non ealdem ex utro q produre actionel quemadmodum pudorul quoq & cótentionil eodem permanente nomine diuerle actióel füt. Nempe bomini cultul profuit.nociit q pudorul ut Heliodul inquir. Cótentionil item genul non limplex fed duplex eft. ut. n. idem poeta inquit. Hec puería nimifidigna est laudarier illa. Ad/ uerfolg animol longe propellere tendunt. Quid igitur mirum li beniuoletia bonelta & lancta idem nomen babet: cum turpi fe/ doq affectu! Honestum boc genus amord quem Plato celestem etamiac duunti appellar. in litterif quoqi facrif celebrari tudemuli quemadmodum Salomon specie quadam elegie sacra cătica mo/dulatus eltique nus quicp pro sua se scriberif unreure indicetimale deuro illo duuno sentiat necesse est. precto ita natura coparată É.ut q castitate ac moderatioe asmi pstat: quecuq: buiusmoi uer/ ba in melioré parté accipiat. quero ppruf sceleribus coinquatul

MARCI FABII QVINTILIANI LIBER TERTIVS INCIPIT FOELICITER.

DE Scriptoribus artis rhetorica.



delle ea & unlem & uirtuté ut uires noftre ruleft oftédimus:materiage et res oés de qbus dicere oporters
fubrecimus. Iam hine unde cerpent:quibus conflet:
quo quacq: in ea modo inuenienda arq; tractada fint
exequar. Intra quem modum pleriog feriptores artiù coltiteft: adeo ut
Appollodorus cotentus folis iudicialibus fuerit. Nec fum ignarus hoc
a me pracipue:quod hic liber incohatoopus studiosos eius desiderasse
ut squistinone opinionii quac diuersissima fueruntlonge disficillimii
ita nescio:an minime legentibus surus; uoluptati:quippe quod prope
nudam praceptorum traditionem desideret. In cateris en admissere
emptaujums aliquid nitoris: non jactandi ingenii gratua.nanci in id nuaam praceptorum traditionem desidente. In ceter en l'admittere temptauimus aliquid nitoris : non iactandi ingenit gratua:nanq; in id eligi materia poterat uberior. Sed ut hoc ipfo alliceremus magis iuué tutem ad cognitionem eose quæ neceffaria studiis arbitrabamur: si du-cti iucunditate aliqua lectionis libentius discerent ca quoru ne iciuna ato arida tradirio auesterex animos & aures i prafertim tam delicatas raderex ucerebamur. Qua ronc fe Lucretius dict pracepta philosophia camine esse especial esta a describation de la constitución de la cultura puenta absinthia tetra medentes: Cum dare conanturprius orapocula circum-Aspirant mellis dulci slavog liquore. Et qua sequinte Sed nos nunc ueremur: ne parum hic liber mellis: & absinthia multum habere uideaturis seguinte parum hic liber mellis: & absinthia multum habere uideaturis seguinte mortina de la constitución de la constitu ne ex eo minorem: gratiam ineat:quod pleraq; non inuéta per me: fed ab aliis tradita continebit habeat etiam quofdam qui contra fentiant & aduerfent propterea q plurimi auctores: quis code téderét diuerfas tamen uias inuenerunt satq; in fuam quifq; induxit fequentes. Ili aŭt probant qualecunq; ingrelli funt iter nec facile inculcatas pueris pfua-fiones mutaueris:quia nemo no didiciffe mauult q difeere. Est autem ut procedente libro patebit infinita disfensio auctorum. Primo ad ca q rudia arq imperfecta adhuc erant adiciento auctorum. Primo ad ca procedente libro patebit infinita disfensio suctorum. Primo ad ca q rudia arq imperfecta adhuc erant adiciento auctorum. ptoribus mox:ut aliquid sui uiderent afferre etiam recta mutantibus. Na primus post eos quos poetæ tradidest mouisse aliqua circa rhetori cen Empedocles dicitur. Artium autem scriptores atiquissimi Corax & Thyfias ficuli: quos infecutus estuir eiusde insulæ Gorgias Leontinus

os nefadi a dit & lege orem uitio

od hic liber nionű:qua nelegentit

The spread of printing in the 16th century

1503 Turkey 1508 Romania 1515 Greece

1563 Palestine 1584 Peru

1556 India

1534 Mexico 1550 Ireland 1553 Russia

1590 Japan

Venetian type from 1500

1499 Colona Hypnerotomachia Poliphili type by Francesco Griffo

21

1515 Lucretius De Rerum Natura type by Francesco Griffo

tamente, quella alquato temperai. Et reflexi gli rifonati fospiri, & cui adulatrice speracia (Ocibo amoroso degli amanti, & souente fiate cu lachrymolo poto cóiuncto) per altro morficante freno gyrai gli cócitati péfieri cú tanto penficulato & fabricato piacere mirando cú extremo dilecto in eu canto peniciano de aoriesa o practe; infranto e u estento anecto in quel corpo gratifimo & geniale, in quelle rofee gene, in úlli mébri nitidi & luculei folaciantifi. Per leç le fingulare cofe, gli mei fremé di defii cófor-tantime benignamé te mitigai, dallerabio fe ire da tropo ardore redempti, & dal foco amorofo cufi ppinquo che dispositaméte seaccendeuano.

LA NYMPHA PER ALTRI BELLI LOCHILO AMO-ROSO POLIPHILO CONDVCE, OVE VIDE INNVME RENYMPHE SOLENNIGIANTE ET CVM IL TRIVM-PHO DI VERTVNO ET DI POMONA DINTORNO VNA SACRA ARA ALACREMENTE FESTIGIANTI. DA POSCIA PER VENERON AD VNO MIR AVEGLIO SO TEMPLO. ILOVALE ELLO IN PARTE DESCRI-VE,ET LARTE AEDIFICATORIA. ET COME NEL DI-CTO TEMPLO, PER ADMONITO DELLA ANTISTITE, LA NYMPHA CVM MOLTA CERIMONIA LA SVA FACOLA EXTINSE, MANIFESTANTISE ESSERE LA SVA POLIA A POLIPHILO. ET POSCIA CVM LA SA-CRIFICABONDA ANTISTETE, NEL SANCTO SACEL LO INTRATA DINANTI LA DIVINA ARA INVOCO LE TRE GRATIE.

OONTRASTARE GIA NON VALEVA IO alle caleste & uiolente armature, & dicio hauendo la ele gantifima Nymphaamorofaméteadepto, de me mifel lo amante irretuocabile dominio, Seco piu oltra (imitan te io gli moderati uefligii) abactrice pare allei uerfo ad uno spatioso littore mecóduceua, llquale era cótermine della florigera & collinea cóualle, Oue terminauano a questo littore le or

natemontagniole, & uitiferi colli, cum præclufi aditi, questa aurea patria, piena di incredibile oblectamento circumclaustrando. Legnale erano di piena di incredibile oblectamento circumclaustrando. Lequale erano di filuosi nemori di cossipicua densitate, quanto si fusseron stati gli arbusculi ordinatamicte locati amorne, Quale il Taxo cyrneo, & lo Arcado, il pina stro infructuoso & resinaceo, alti Pini, driti Abieti, negligenti al pandare, & contumaci al pondo, Arsibile Picce, il sungoso Larice, Tedearee, & gli colli amanti, Celebrati & cultiuati da sessigiante oreade, Quiui ambidui misi LVCR.

o bruerent terras;nisi inædificata superne M ulta forent multis exemptonubila sole.

N ec tanto possent terras opprimere imbri:

F lumina abundare ut facerent: camposq; natare:

S inon extructis foret alte nubibus ather.

H is igitur uentis, atq; i grubus omnia plena

S unt:ideo paffim fremitus, or fulgura fiunt.

Quippe etenim supra docui permulta uaporis

S emina habere cauas nubers: 65º multa necesse est

C onapere ex folis radis, ardoreq; eorum.

H oc, ubi uentus eas idem qui cogit in unum

F orte locum quemuis, expressie multa naporis S emina: feq; simul cum eo commiscuit igni:

I nsimuatus ibi uortex uerfatur in alto:

E t calides acuit fulmen fornacibus intus.

N am dupliciratione accendituriple sua cum

M obilitate calefat: @ è contagibus ignis. I nde ubi perculuituis uenti:uel graus ignis

I mpetus incessit:maturum tum quasi fulmen P erfandit subito nubem: ferturq; corusas

o mnia luminibus lustrans loca percitus ardor.

Quem graus insequitur soni us: displosarepente

O pprimere ut coli uideantur templa superne.

I nde tremor terras grauiter pertentat: @ altum

M urmura percurrunt coelum nam tota fere tum

I empestas concussa eremit: fremitusq; mouentur.

Quo de concussus sequitur graus imber, or uber:

O mnis uti ui deatur in imbrem uertier æther:

A to the precipitans ad diluniem renocare;

T antus diffidio nubis, uentiq; proælla,

Venetian publisher Aldus Manutius (1450-1515) was the first of the great European printer-scholars, his books valued for their accuracy and scholarship. Their beauty owed much to Francesco Griffo da Bologna, a type-caster working for Manutius. By making the uppercase letters shorter than the ascenders in the lower case, Griffo was able to create a more even texture on the page than Jenson had achieved.

Manutius's achievements include the first pocket-sized books, whose low cost and easy portability helped foster the spread of knowledge among Renaissance scholars. In 1501, editions of Virgil and Juvenal featured Griffo's first italic typeface, based on the chancery script favored by Italian papal scribes. The immediate value of the italic was its narrower letterforms, which allowed for more words on a page, thereby reducing paper costs. Griffo's italics were produced only in lower case.



Gentile Bellini
Procession of the Reliquary of the
Cross in Piazza San Marco (detail)
1496
Galleria dell'Accademia, Venice

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ
abcdefghijklmn
opqrstuvwxyz
1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLM
NOPQRSTUVWXYZ
1234567890
abcdefghijklmn
opqrstuvwxyz
1234567890

Bembo (shown here) is based on type cut by Francesco Griffo in 1495 for an edition of *De Aetna* by Pietro Bembo. This revival of Griffo's typeface was first produced by the Monotype Corporation in 1929, under the direction of Stanley Morison. The italic is based not on Griffo's type, but on the calligraphy of early 16th-century scribes Ludovico degli Arrighi and Giovantonio Tagliente.

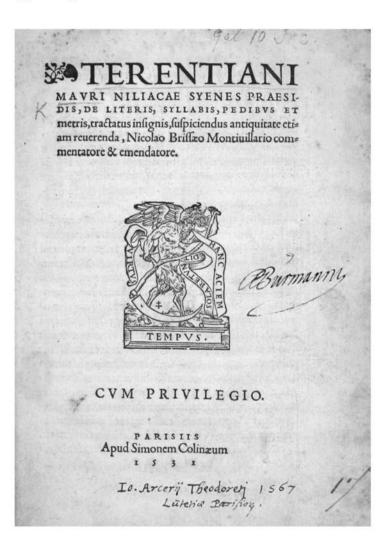
1531
Terentiani Mauri Niliacae Syenes
Praesidis
Printed by Simon de Colines
Paris
Type-cast by Claude Garamond

The earliest printers in France brought with them the blackletter they had learned to cast in Mainz. By 1525, however, a group of French printers—among them Henri and Robert Estiennes, Simon de Colines, Geofroy Tory, and Jean de Tournes—had made the Venetian model their own, mirroring contemporary French interest in Italian Renaissance culture.

Of particular importance to the history of type is Parisian Claude Garamond (1480–1561), the first independent typefounder. Beyond establishing type-casting as a profession distinct from printing, Garamond created letterforms more expressive of the steel in which he worked than of the strokes made by a calligrapher's pen. A comparison of a Venetian 'a' (Monotype Dante, below left) with Garamond's (Adobe Garamond, below right) clearly demonstrates the difference:

a a

Around 1540, Garamond and his collaborator Robert Granjon developed the first italic forms that were intended for use with roman forms, including an italic upper case. Granjon's work in italic continued until 1577, when he designed a type-face called Civilité that reverted back to the elaborate French batarde handwriting of the day. Although it did not supplant italic, it did spur a line of script typefaces that continues to the present day.





ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmn opqrstuvwxyz 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ
1234567890
abcdefghijklmn
opqrstuvwxyz
1234567890

For years, most typefaces called Garamond were derived from cuttings produced in 1615 by Jean Jannon, based on Garamond's work. Robert Slimbach produced Adobe Garamond (shown here) in 1989, working directly from specimens of Garamond's roman and Granjon's italic.

The spread of printing in the 17th century

1602 Philippines 1610 Lebanon Bolivia

n

1642 Finland 1643 Norway 1644 China

1639 America 1640 Iran

Dutch printing c. 1600

28

1572
Polyglot Bible (Preface)
Printed by Christophe Plantin
Antwerp

By the end of the 16th century, Dutch publishing houses, particularly the Plantin-Moretus and Elzevir family enterprises, were among the most successful in Europe. At first, these publishers and printers bought much of their type from French foundries. By the 17th century, however, they were buying from typefounders closer at hand.

Dutch type was widely recognized not so much for its intrinsic beauty as for its clarity and sturdiness. Compare, for example, (French) Adobe Garamond (left) and (Dutch) Linotype Janson (right):

a a

Virtually all English type of the period was purchased in Holland. The Oxford University Press, founded in 1667, purchased its first type from Christoffel van Dijck of Amsterdam. In 1672, Bishop John Fell brought over punches and matrices cut by Dirk and Bartholomew Voskens for the press.

REGNI NEAPOLITANI PRIVILEGIV M.

PHILIPPUS DEI GRATIA REX CASTELLÆ, ARAGONUM, UTRIUSQUE SICILIÆ, HIERUSALEM, UNGARIÆ, DALMATLÆ, ET CROATIÆ, &C.

NTONIVS Perrenotus, S.R.C. Tit. Sancti Petri ad Vincula Prefby-

ter, Cardinalis de Granuela; prefatæ Regiæ & Catholicæ Maiestatis à consiliis status, & in hoc Regno locum tenens, & Capitaneus ge-

neralis, &c. Mag[®] viro Christophoro Plantino, ciui Antuerpien-si, & præfatæ Čatholicæ Maiestatis Prototypographo sideli Regio, dilecto, gratiam Regiam & bonam voluntatem. Cùm ex præclarorum virorum literis certiores facti simus, opus Bibliorum quinque linguarum, cum tribus Apparatuum tomis, celeberrimum, reique publice Christiana vtilissimu, eiusdem serenissimæ Maiestatis iuslu, ope atque auspiciis, ad publicam totius Christiani orbis commoditatem & ornamentum, typis longè elegantissimis, & præstantissimi viri Benedicti Ariæ Montani præcipua cura & studio . quam emendatissimè à te excusum esse, cius demé, exemplar sanctissimo Domino nostro PP. Gregorio XIII. oblatum, ita placuisse, vt præfatæ Maiestatis sanctos conatus, & Regi Catholico in primis conuenientes, summopere laudarit, & amplissima tibi privilegia ad hoc opus tuendum Motu proprio concesserit; Nos quoque cum naturali genio impellimur ad fouendum præclara quæque ingenia, quæ infigni quopiam conatu ad publica commoda promouenda atque augenda aspirant, primum quidem longe præclarissimum hoc suz Maiestatis studium, vt vere Heroicum & Prolomei, Eumenis, aliorumque olim conatibus in Bibliothecis instruendis co præstantius, quod non vanæstimulo gloriz, yt illi, sed rectz Religionis conscruanda & propaganda zelo susceptum, meri-to suspicientes; deinde eximiam operam doctissim B. Ariz Montani, ac immortali laude dignam admirantes, rebusque tuis, quemadmodú tuo nomine expetitur, prospicere cupientes, ne meritis frauderis fructibus tanta opera, & impensa, qua summa folicitudine & industria in opus adfinem feliciter perducendum à teetiam insumpta esseaccepimus, cumque certo constet, opus hoc nunquam hactenus hoc in Regno exculum este, dignumque ipso S. sedis Apostolica suffragio sit iudicatum yt diuulgetur ac priuilegiis ornetur. Tuis igitur iustissimis votis, vt deliberato consilio, ita alacri & exporrecta fronte lubenter annuentes, tenore præsentium ex gratia speciali, præsatæ Maiestatis nomine, cum deliberatione & assistentia Regij collateralis consilijistatuimus & decreuimus, ne quis intra viginti annos proximos, a die dat præfentium deinceps numerandos, in hoc Regno dictum Bibliorum opus, cum Apparatuum tomis confunctis, vel Apparatus ipsos, aut eoru partem aliquam seorsum, citraipsius Christophori, aut causam & ius ab ipso habentis, licentiam imprimere, aut ab aliis impresfa vendere, aut in suis officinis vel alias tenere possit. Volentes & decernetes expresse,



Jacob van Campen Royal Palace (formerly Amsterdam Town Hall) Dam Square 1647–1655

ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ
abcdefghijklmn
opqrstuvwxyz
1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmn opqrstuvwxyz 1234567890 Although Janson was named for Dutch punch-cutter Anton Janson, we now know that it was cut by Hungarian Nicholas Kis in 1690. This version from Linotype is based on Stempel Foundry castings made in 1919 from Kis's original matrices.

1734 William Caslon Type specimen sheet London

SPECIMEN

By W. CASLON, Letter-Founder, in Ironmonger-Row, Old-Street, LONDON.

ABCDEFGHIJKL ABCDEFGHIKLMN

Quoulque tan-

abutere, Catilina, patiDOUBLE PICA ROMAN.

GREAT PRIMER ROMAN.

ENGLISH ROMAN.

Quousque tandem abuter, Catilina, patientia noftra? quamdiu nos etiam furor ifte tuus eludet? quem ad finem see effirenta juclabit audacia? nihilne te noclurmum præfidium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ, nihil timor populi, nihil consensa bonorum omnium, nihil hir munitifima ABCDEFOHIJKLMNOPQRSTVUW

Catilina, pati
Quoufque tandem

ABCDEFGHISLANDOPERS JUNE OF ABCDEFGHISLANDOPERS JUNE

abutere. Catilina At non vigificant in the patient belocer

Double Pica Italick.

Quousque tandem abutere, Cati- Quousque tandem abutere, Catililina, patientia nostra? quamdiu na, patientia nostra? quamdiu nos etiam furor iste tius eludet? nos etiam furor iste tius eludet? quem ad finem sese effentata jac-ABCDEFGHJIKLMNOP ABCDEFGHJIKLMNO

Great Primer Italick.

Great Primer Italick.
Quousque tandem abutére, Catilina, patientia nostra? quamdiu nos etiam futeror iste tuus eludet? quem ad finem sese estrenata jacabit audacia? nihilne tenocturuum præssidum palatii, nihil enbis vigiliæ, nihil timor populi, nihil conABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRS

Great Primer Italick.

Totalick.

For all Primer Italick.

For all Primer Ita

Dis Von DEFGH1 Januar ABCDEFGH1 Januar ABCDEFGH1 Januar ABCDEFGH1 Januar ABCDEFGH1 Januar ABCDEFGH1 Januar ABCDEFGH1 Januar Janu ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTVU

Pica Black. And be it further enaked by the Authority aforefaid. Chat all and every of the faid Er-chequer Bills to be made forth by virtue of

atta insak on in himnam yeihhai Nama oein cimai oinainassiis oeins Yaikoai viaga oeins sye in himna

Бен офарм ффф оваво йтфе нева пк-Soaco su bode avuorac su se seveni +187 вого пголф пэхэ хэсрап глажоо †2007-ай -0 - roumin nexts rounded that andro

William Caslon (1692-1766) was the first notable English type designer. He introduced his sturdy, albeit idiosyncratic, typeface in 1734. It gained widespread acceptance almost immediately and, except between 1800 and 1850, has been a standard ever since. The influence of Dutch models is clear if you compare Janson (left) with Caslon (right):

Caslon's type was distributed throughout England's American colonies, and was the typeface used in the first printed copies of the U.S. Declaration of Independence and Constitution. Through his sons, the foundry was to continue well into the second half of the 19th century.



Thomas Chippendale Chair back (detail) from *The Gentleman and Cabinet-Maker's Director* London 1754

ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmn opqrstuvwxyz 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ
1234567890
abcdefghijklmn
opqrstuvwxyz
1234567890

Adobe Caslon, introduced in 1990, was designed by Carol Twombly from Caslon specimen sheets of 1738 and 1786. 1761
William Congreve
The Works of William Congreve
typeset and printed by John Baskerville
Birmingham

At the turn of the 18th century, Philippe Grandjean was almost a decade into production of a *romain du roi* for Louis XIV's royal press—a project that would carry on 30 years past his death in 1714. Characterized by thin, unbracketed serifs, extreme contrast between thick and thin strokes, and a perpendicular stress, the typeface marked a clear departure from the types of Griffo and Garamond, and met with immediate acclaim. However, as the personal property of the king, it could not be used by commercial printers.

Enterprising typefounders in France began copying Grandjean's work almost immediately, but the most successful application of his ideas came from John Baskerville (1706–1775), a self-taught typefounder, papermaker, and printer in Birmingham. Baskerville's type featured pronounced contrast between thick and thin strokes and a clear vertical stress. Compare Bembo (left) and Baskerville (right):





To maintain the delicacy of his type on the page, Baskerville had to develop several ancillary technologies. To prevent his shiny ink from spreading beyond the actual imprint of the page, he crafted his own very smooth paper (now called a 'wove' finish; earlier, ribbed sheets are called 'laid'). He also pressed his sheets between heated copper plates after printing to hasten drying.

The Life of CONGREVE. xix natural, that, if we were not apprifed of it, we should never have suspected they were Translations. But there is one Piece of his which ought to be particularly distinguished, as being so truly an Original, that though it seems to be written with the utmost Facility, yet we may despair of ever seeing it copied: This is his Doris, so highly and so justly commended by Sir Richard Steele, as the sharpest and most delicate Satire he had ever met with.

His two Pieces of the Dramatic Kind, do him equal Honor as a Poet and as a Lover of Music, viz. The Judgment of Paris, a Masque, and The Opera of Semele. Of these, the former was acted with great Applause, and the latter finely set to Music by Mr. Eccles. In Respect to both, it is but Justice to say, that they have the same Stamp of Excellency with the Rest of his Writings, were considered as Master-pieces when published, and may serve as Models to Posterity.

His Essay upon Humor in English Comedy, is, without Doubt, as instructive, as entertaining,



George Hepplewhite Window stool from *The Cabinet-Maker and Upholsterer's Guide* London

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ
abcdefghijklmn
opqrstuvwxyz
1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ
1234567890
abcdefghijklmn
opqrstuvwxyz
1234567890

Monotype Baskerville was produced in 1929 under Stanley Morison's direction. 1818
Giambattista Bodoni
Manuale Tipografico
Parma (published posthumously)

Baskerville's innovations exerted a notable influence on European typefounders, particularly the Didot and Fournier families in France and Giambattista Bodoni (1740–1813) in Italy.

Serving as the subsidized private printer to the Duke of Parma, Bodoni produced over 100 type-faces. His early typefaces retain some elements we associate with Baskerville, primarily in the gentle slope of the upper serifs of the "i," j," and "!." Firmin Didot, by contrast, produced type with unbracketed, purely horizontal serifs. Compare Bauer Bodoni (left) and Linotype Didot (right):

f i

Bodoni carried forward the technological advances begun by Baskerville, improving both ink and paper surface to show off his delicate type to best advantage. GIAMBATTISTA BODONI A CHI LEGGE. Eccovi i saggi dell'industria e delle fatiche mie di molti anni consecrati con veramente geniale impegno ad un'arte, che è compimento della più bella, ingegnosa, e giovevole invenzione degli uomini, voglio dire dello scrivere, di cui è la stampa la miglior maniera, ogni qual volta sia pregio dell'opera far a molti copia delle stesse parole, e maggiormente quando importi aver certezza che

I



Alexandre-Pierre Vignon Church of Mary Magdalene ('La Madeleine') Paris 1807-1842

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ
abcdefghijklmn
opqrstuvwxyz
1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ
1234567890
abcdefghijklmn
opqrstuvwxyz
1234567890

Bauer Bodoni, produced by Louis Höll of the Bauer type foundry in 1926, is based on Bodoni's cuts of 1789. It shows clearly the differences between what Bodoni actually produced and what people often think of as 'Bodoni'.

ABC

W CASLON JUNR

Boldface

The Industrial Revolution of the early 19th century, triggered by the invention of the steam engine, changed printing, typesetting, and type-casting from the product of the human hand to the product of power-driven machinery. The sheer speed of mechanized presses meant that thousands of copies could be printed in the time it formerly took to print dozens. The sudden, wide dissemination of printed matter contributed to the rise of literacy as dramatically as the invention of printing itself had three and a half centuries earlier. It also created a new market of consumers for manufacturers. Products (and services. for that matter) could be advertised to broad masses at relatively low cost. Printers began to distinguish between book printing and jobbing, or commercial printing. This new printing required a new esthetic.

Typefaces from the previous centuries, designed for text settings, seemed inadequate for the new medium of advertising. Bigger, bolder, louder type was required to make messages stand out in the otherwise gray printed environment. One of the first typefounders to experiment with a 'fat face' was Robert Thorne who, in 1803, cast the face that would bear his name (above left). Hundreds of boldfaces followed.

For several decades, boldfaces existed in a class distinct from text type. However, by the time typefaces from the 16th, 17th, and 18th centuries were revived in the early 20th century, typefounders (notably Morris Benton of American Type Founders) were so accustomed to working with boldface that they chose to retrofit bold forms into each typeface 'family,' along with existing italics, small caps, etc.

Sans serif

One variation of the boldface idea involved losing serifs altogether. First introduced by William Caslon IV in 1816 (above right), sans serif type, featuring no change in stroke weight, was reserved almost exclusively for headlines, although there are occasional examples of sans serif captions.

Caslon named his type 'Egyptian,' probably because the art and architecture of ancient Egypt had colored European imagination since Napoleon's campaign and the discovery of the Rosetta stone in 1799. But the label didn't stick. Opponents of the form quickly called it 'grotesque,' others termed it 'gothic' (a style that was also enjoying a revival in the early 19th century). English typefounder Vincent Figgins was the first to call it 'sans syrruph,' in 1832.



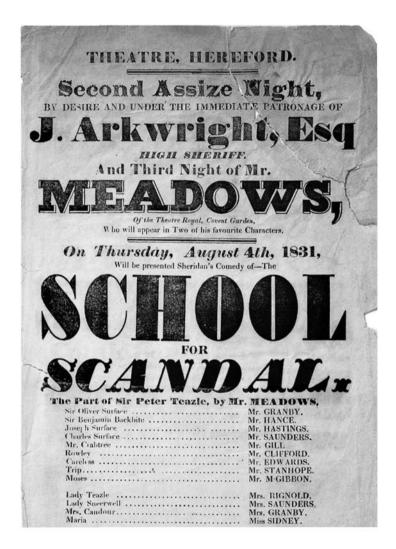
Charles Barry and A.W.N. Pugin Houses of Parliament London 1840–1860

1831 Poster

Display faces

Since medieval copyists had illuminated initial letters in manuscripts. typographers had often produced oversized, intricately detailed letterforms to provide color and contrast on the text page. In the 19th century, at the same time as the development of boldface and for much the same reason, typefounders began casting entire typefaces-upper- and lowercase - decorated (illuminated) to suggest various architectural and natural motifs. Typically, these typefaces were intended for use as headlines or display material; hence, the term 'display face.' In most cases the vogue for any particular display face lasted only as long as the trend in fashion it mimicked.

The subsequent evolution of type technology (first phototypesetting, then digital rendering), combined with the desire of some designers to introduce novelty for its own sake, has given rise to the use of these display faces (and their 20th-century offspring) in all kinds of settings, from 100-pt. display material in advertising to 7-pt, phone numbers on business cards. As it happens, we all know our alphabet well enough that we can usually read the letters and numbers in display faces despite the tortuous machinations they have endured.



1817 Vincent Figgins

Specimens of Printing Types London

Two Lines Great Primer, in Shade.

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO PORSTUVWXYZ&38.°

Two Lines Brevier, in Shade.

ABCDEFGHIJKLUNOPQRSTUVWXYZ&,33°.

Two Lines Nonpareil, in Shade.

ABCDERCHIJKLIINOPORSTUVWXYXAECE&0330-°

FOUR LINES PICA, ANTIQUE.

MANKIND

Two Lines Small Pica, Antique.

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVW

v. FIGGINS.

A fourth 19th-century development in typography—the square serif—first appeared in England in 1817. Just as William Caslon IV was eliminating serifs altogether, other typefounders were fattening them up to have the same weight as the strokes of the letterform itself. First called 'Antique' by Vincent Figgins (above), the type eventually became known as 'Egyptian,' perhaps because its strong serifs mirrored the base and capital of an Egyptian column.

Although some 19th-century square serifs (such as Clarendon) drew upon traditional letterforms (and, like Clarendon, had bracketed serifs), many 20th-century typefaces referred to geometric models.

The mechanization of printing, and the allied rise of advertising, contributed to a general degradation of both the printer's and the typographer's craft. By the end of the 19th century, however, movements were afoot in both the U.S. and the UK to revive the handicraft and the care of previous centuries' printing. Central to this revival was William Morris's Kelmscott Press, founded in 1891.



Front of Crystal Palace Hyde Park, London from *The Illustrated London News* May, 1851

ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPORSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmn opgrstuvwxyz

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmn opgrstuvwxyz

Adrian Frutiger designed Glypha for Linotype in 1977. Compare Frutiger's forms with earlier, more geometric slab serifs like Memphis (below), designed by Rudolf Wolf for the Stempel foundry in 1929.

ABCDEFGHIJ KLMNOPQRST UVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijkl mnopqrstuvw xyz 1923 (top) Prospectus for the Bauhaus László Moholy-Nagy

1959 (bottom) New Graphic Design Josef Müller-Brockmann, Richard Lohse, Hans Neuberg and Carlo Vivarelli, eds.

The movement to revive older type models, led by T. J. Cobden-Sanderson, Stanley Morison, and Beatrice Warde in the UK and Daniel Berkeley Updike, Frederick W. Goudy, W. A. Dwiggins, and Bruce Rogers in the U.S., flourished in the early 20th century. Their scholarly work showed typography, for the first time, to be a subject worthy of study even as they demonstrated the value of earlier forms.

At the same time, the astonishing and often bewildering technological developments of the new century. combined with widespread social upheaval in Europe and America, caused many to seek new forms of graphic expression. Sans serif typeuntil then reserved for headlines and captions-was seen by many as most appropriate for asymmetric page composition that broke with traditional models. It is worth noting that the idea of graphic design as a profession distinct from printing, type-casting, or 'fine' art, began at the same time.



Neue Grafik New Graphic Design Graphisme actuel

International Review of graphic Review retained expects of page and related subjects of demands anneaes anneaes (service forman forman

rattume one Haffrechulce tang leschollung und Produktion

Merauspater und Radation Entera and Managing Benera Enterra et rädection Orack Verlag Printing Publishing Impropera Edition

Richard P. Lohde SWB 15G, Zonich J. Muster Brossmann SWB 15G, Zonich Hans Neutong SWB 15G, Zonich Carlo L. Yvanich SWB 15G, Zonich Verlag Otto Water AG. Otto-School: Sectorians Suiss



Lyubov Popova set design of Fernand Crommelynk, *Le Cocu magnifique* State Institute of Theatrical Art Moscow 1922

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmn opqrstuvwxyz

1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmn opgrstuvwxyz

The first widely used sans serif typeface, Akzidenz Grotesk was developed by the Berthold type foundry in 1896. ('Akzidenz' is German for the 'schrift' or type used by commercial—as opposed to book—printers, and 'grotesk' is the German word for sans serif. In the U.S., the typeface was known simply as Standard.) The light weight includes a set of lowercase numerals (shown in red) designed by Erik Spiekermann in 1990.

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmn opqrstuvwxyz

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmn opgrstuvwxyz

Designed by Eric Gill in 1928, Gill Sans is based on the typeface his teacher, Edward Johnston, created in 1916 for the signage of the London Underground. Gill also designed several serif typefaces (Perpetua, Joanna, Aries) which share many of the proportions and characteristic counters of Gill Sans. Although strictly contemporary in effect, Gill's type, like Johnston's before him, owes much to the proportions and forms of the Renalssance letter.



Pierre Jeanneret (Le Corbusier) Villa Savoie Poissy, France 1928–1929

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmn opqrstuvwxyz

aaaeggmnr 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmn opqrstuvwxyz

Designed by Paul Renner in 1927, Futura is the first geometric sans serif typeface designed for text applications. Although Futura seems to use basic geometric proportions, it is in fact a complex combination of stressed strokes and complex curves, with stronger connections to preceding serif forms than its spare effect would at first suggest.

Renner designed a number of lowercase forms and numerals for Futura (shown in red), which the Bauer foundry abandoned, but which were revived by The Foundry (London) as Architype Renner in 1994.



	Univers	Univers	Univers	Univers
	53	63	73	83
	Univers	Univers	Univers	Univers
	54	64	74	84
Univers	Univers	Univers	Univers	Univers
45	55	65	75	85
Univers	Univers	Univers	Univers	Univers
46	56	66	76	86
Univers 47	Univers 57	Univers 67		
Univers 48	Univers 58	Univers 68		
Univers 49	Univers 59			

By mid-century, phototypesetting had replaced metal type for most commercial work, further freeing both typesetting and layouts from the technical restrictions of older traditions. Phototypesetting had its own drawbacks, however, which were finally resolved with the introduction of desktop publishing in the 1980s.

Univers 39

Although Adrian Frutiger is well respected for a number of widely used typefaces, his masterwork is Univers, released in 1957 by the Deberny & Peignot foundry in Paris for both metal and phototype. In an effort to eliminate the growing confusion in typeface terminology (thin/light, regular/medium, bold/black) Frutiger used numbers rather than names to describe the palette of weights and widths in Univers. (Opposite: Univers 55)

In any two-digit descriptor, the first number designates line weight (3- is the thinnest, 8- the heaviest) and the second designates character width (-3 is the most extended, -9 the most condensed). Even numbers indicate italic, odd numbers roman. Frutiger has subsequently used this system on other typefaces he has designed (Serifa, Glypha, Frutiger, Avenir, etc.), and other type manufacturers have adapted his system for some of their typefaces (Helvetica Neue, etc.).



The 'Caravelle'
French jet transport plane
1956

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmn opgrstuvwxyz

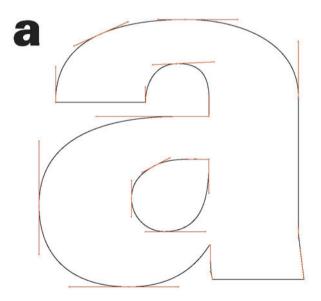
ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmn opgrstuvwxyz



As the personal computing industry blossomed in the 1980s, so too did the concept of desktop publishing, whereby a designer had at his or her fingertips all the tools necessary to design, typeset, and illustrate a project, without having to resort to outside vendors. In many ways, the work method was a return to medieval scriptoriums. Bitstream, Inc. began offering digital typefaces in 1981; Adobe Systems, Inc. followed shortly thereafter. By 1990, virtually every type foundry in the world offered digital versions of their typefaces, and numerous type shops had opened up offering exclusively digital fonts. By 2000, 500-year-old methods of producing type had been relegated to the province of purists and hobbyists. An entire professional class-the typesetter-was extinct.

However, thanks to the early contributions and high standards of type designers Matthew Carter, Sumner Stone, and many others, this change in production did not necessarily mean a lessening of quality. The field of type design has continued to thrive, coupled with welcome advances in digital technology. Designers have never before had so much type-and so much good type-at their disposal.





36 pt. Univers 75 bitmapped for screen presentation

36 pt. Univers 75 vectored for printing

46

47

In the last two decades, some typographers - notably Otl Aicher, Martin Majoor, Erik Spiekermann, and Sumner Stone-have developed families of typefaces that not only include a range of color (light/regular/bold/black), but also incorporate serif and sans serif versions. Shown here are samples from Aicher's Rotis family, drawn in 1989.

Rotis

Light

Rotis

Light

SemiSans

Sans Serif

Regular Regular Regular Regular

	Regular	Italic	Bold	
	Rotis SemiSerif Regular		Rotis SemiSerif Bold	
Rotis	Rotis	Rotis	Rotis	Rotis
SemiSans	SemiSans	SemiSans	SemiSans	SemiSans
Light Italic	Regular	Italic	Bold	Extra Bold
Rotis	Rotis	Rotis	Rotis	Rotis
Sans Serif	Sans Serif	Sans Serif	Sans Serif	Sans Serif
Light Italic	Regular	Italic	Bold	Extra Bold

Rotis

Serif

Rotis

Serif

Rotis

Serif

Text typeface classification

Dates of origin approximated to the nearest quarter century

As you have seen, type forms have developed in response to prevailing technology, commercial needs, and esthetic trends. Certain models have endured well past the cultures that spawned them. Recognizing the need to identify the stages of typeform development, typographers have come up with a number of systems to classify typefaces, some of them dizzying in their specificity.

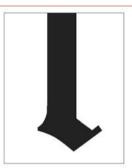
The classification here, based on one devised by Alexander Lawson, covers only the main forms of text type. Decorative styles have been omitted, and sans serif forms have been grouped together without differentiation between humanist and geometric forms.

This system offers a useful, if simplified, description of the kinds of type you will most often encounter working with text. As your experience with type develops, you should definitely familiarize yourself with other, more specific, systems. Keep in mind that the best system is the one that most helps you recognize kinds of typefaces and their historical origins.

1450

Blackletter

The earliest printing types, these forms were based upon the hand-copying styles then used for books in northern Europe.



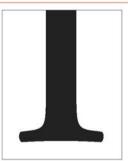
Examples:

Cloister Black Goudy Text

1475

Oldstyle

Based upon the lowercase forms used by Italian humanist scholars for book copying (themselves based upon the 9th-century Caroline minuscule) and the uppercase letterforms found inscribed on Roman ruins. The forms evolved away from their calligraphic origins over 200 years as they migrated across Europe, from Italy to England.



Examples:

Bembo Caslon Dante Garamond Janson Jenson Palatino

1500

Italic

Echoing contemporary Italian handwriting, the first italics were condensed and close-set, allowing more words per page. Although originally considered their own class of type, italics were soon cast to complement roman forms. Since the 16th century, virtually all text typefaces have been designed with accompanying italic (or oblique) forms.



1550

Script

Originally an attempt to replicate engraved calligraphic forms, this class of type is not entirely appropriate in lengthy text settings. In shorter applications, however, it has always enjoyed wide acceptance. Forms now range from the formal and traditional to the casual and contemporary.



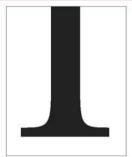
Examples:

Kuenstler Script Mistral Snell Roundhand

1750

Transitional

A refinement of Oldstyle forms, this style was achieved in part because of advances in casting and printing. Thick-to-thin relationships were exaggerated and brackets were lightened.



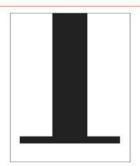
Examples:

Baskerville Bulmer Century Times Roman

1775

Modern

This style represents a further rationalization of Oldstyle letter-forms. Serifs were unbracketed, and the contrast between thick and thin strokes was extreme. English versions (like Bell) are also known as Scotch Roman and more closely resemble transitional forms.



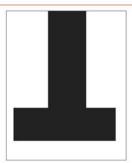
Examples:

Bell Bodoni Caledonia Didot Walbaum

1825

Square serif

Originally heavily bracketed serifs, with little variation between thick and thin strokes, these faces responded to the newly developed needs of advertising for heavy type in commercial printing. As they evolved, the brackets were dropped. This class is also known as slab serif.

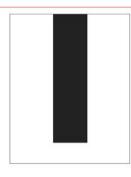


Examples:

Clarendon Memphis Rockwell Serifa 1900

Sans serif

As its name implies, these type-faces eliminated serifs altogether. Although the form was first introduced by William Caslon IV in 1816, its use did not become widespread until the beginning of the 20th century. Variations tended toward either humanist forms (Gill Sans) or the rigidly geometric (Futura). Occasionally, strokes were flared to suggest the epigraphic origins of the form (Optima). Sans serif is also referred to as grotesque (from the German 'grotesk') and gothic.



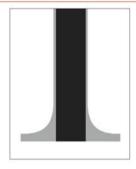
Examples:

Akzidenz Grotesk Grotesque Gill Sans Franklin Gothic Frutiger Futura Helvetica Meta News Gothic Optima Syntax Trade Gothic Univers

1990

Serif/sans serif

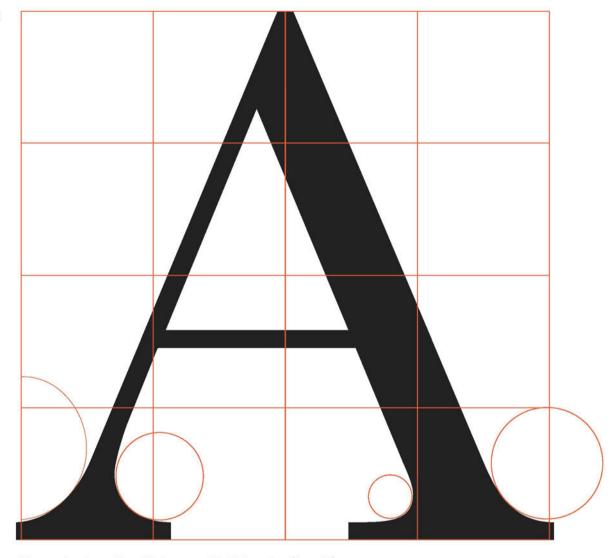
A recent development, this style enlarges the notion of a family of typefaces to include both serif and sans serif alphabets (and, often, stages between the two).



Examples:

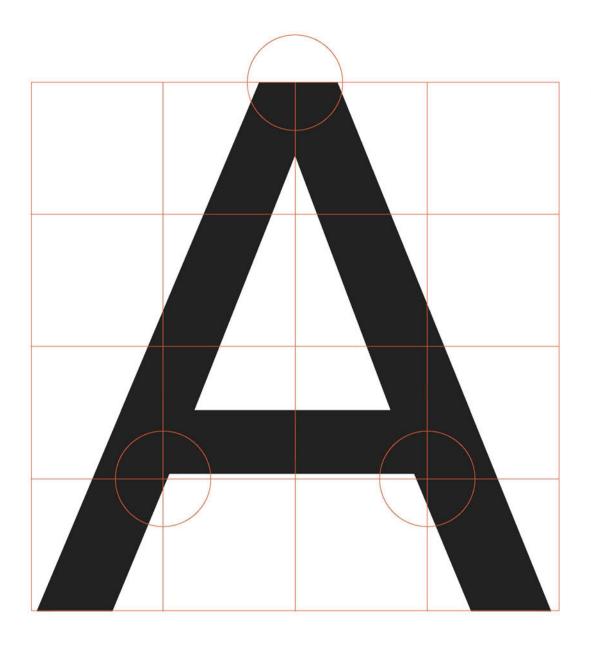
Rotis Scala Stone

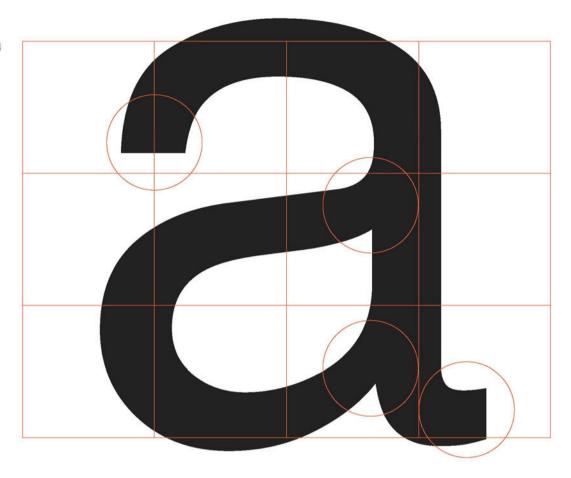
Letters, words, sentences



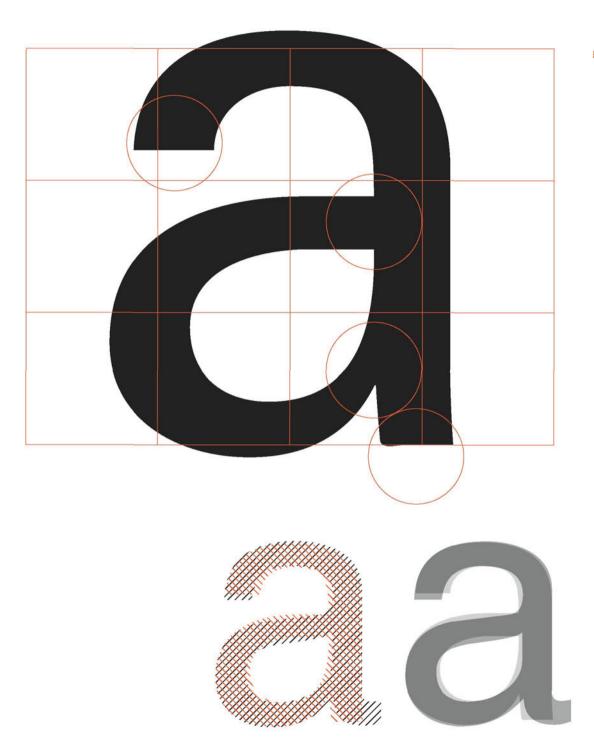
Here are two forms of a relatively simple letter—the uppercase 'a.' Both suggest the symmetry of the form as someone might print it, but neither is in fact symmetrical at all. It's easy to see the two different stroke weights of the Baskerville form (above); more noteworthy is the fact that each of the brackets connecting serif to stem expresses a unique arc.

The Univers form (opposite) may appear symmetrical, but a close examination shows that the width of the left stroke is thinner than that of the right stroke. Both demonstrate the meticulous care a type designer takes to create letterforms that are both internally harmonious and individually expressive.





The complexity of each individual letterform is neatly demonstrated by examining the lowercase 'a' of two seemingly similar sans serif typefaces—Helvetica and Univers. A comparison of how the stems of the letterforms finish and how the bowls meet the stems quickly reveals the palpable difference in character between the two.



56

razors

median

baseline

As you already know, the x-height generally describes the size of lowercase letterforms. However, you should keep in mind that curved strokes, such as in 's', must rise above the median (or sink below the baseline) in order to appear to be the same size as the vertical and horizontal strokes they adjoin.

Compare the 'a' in the large examples above with the 'o' and 's.' The latter two characters clearly seem too small, and bounce around within the perceived x-height of the typeface, because they do not extend beyond the median or baseline. Just as important as recognizing specific letterforms is developing a sensitivity to the counterform (or counter) - the space described, and often contained, by the strokes of the form. When letters are joined to form words, the counterform includes the spaces between them. The latter is a particularly important concept when working with letterforms like the lowercase 'r' that have no counters per se. How well you handle the counters when you set type determines how well words hang together-in other words, how easily we can read what's been set.



desins





Helvetica Black





One of the most rewarding ways to understand the form and counter of letters is to examine them in close detail. Beyond giving you an appreciation of the meticulous care that goes into each compound curve, these examinations also

provide a good feel for how the balance between form and counter is achieved and a palpable sense of a letterform's unique characteristics. It also gives you a glimpse into the process of letter-making. It's worth noting here that the sense of the 'S' holds at each stage of enlargement, while the 'g' tends to lose its identity as individual elements are examined without the context of the entire letterform.

g



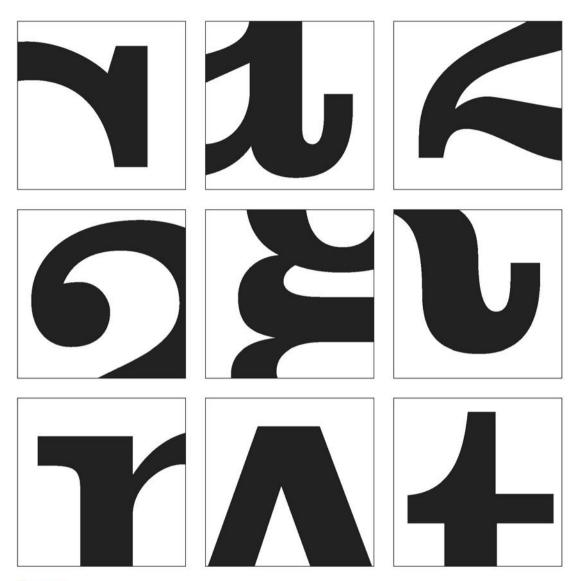
Baskerville







Linotype Didot



Clarendon

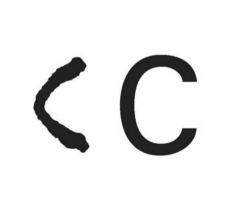
62



BB

Light/bold

Condensed/extended



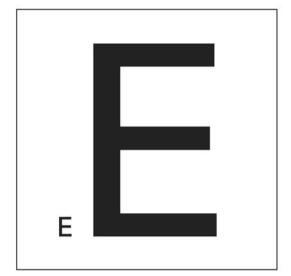


Organic/machined

Roman/italic

The basic principles of graphic design apply directly to typography. Above, some examples of contrast—the most powerful dynamic in design—as applied to type, based on a format devised by Rudi Ruegg.

Combining these simple contrasts produces numerous variations: small+organic/large+machined; few+bold/many+light; etc. Adding color increases the possibilities even more (i.e. black/red).



Small/large



Positive/negative



Serif/sans serif



Ornate/simple

64

quiet



miss ng

ad^ded

It's possible to find typographic equivalents for words. Simple choices in typeface, size, weight, and position on the page can strengthen representation of the concepts, objects, and actions that words describe. Here, we've stuck to one weight of one typeface, Akzidenz Grotesk Medium, but played with size and placement.

The examples above express some quality of the adjectives on display. 'Quiet' is small and lowercase, 'loud' large and uppercase. The second 'i' in 'missing' is, in fact, missing, and the second 'd' in 'added' is in the process of being added.

RAIN

bird

NONCON FORMIST

shadow

The examples above all carry some quality of the nouns expressed. In 'train,' for example, a Fibonacci sequence of type sizes (see page 109), aligned at the cap height, creates the illusion of perspective—we can easily imagine a long train receding into the distance—or, for that matter, pulling into a station.

The dot on the 'i' in 'bird' flies above the rest of the letters; the 'f' in 'nonconformist' does not conform with the other letters; 'shadow' casts a shadow. The examples of contrast in type on pages 62–63 offer a number of possibilities for building on these simple changes.

stand

u

j mp

hang

rise

The meaning of the verbs on this page is reinforced through placement within the frame. Direction is implied by how we read (left-to-right = forward; top-to-bottom = down, and so forth).

fly



float

Sint.

In the second row on this page, meaning is further enhanced by covering up some portion of the word (and, in the case of 'sink,' by tilting the type slightly downward). Imagine taking a bite out of 'eat.'

dance

a n c e

dance

dance

dance

dancedancedance

Here, simple placement of the word 'dance' in the square suggests the activity in a place, possibly a stage. Breaking the letters apart suggests a dancer moving.

Repetition of the word (this page and opposite) suggests different kinds of rhythm and, in fact, different kinds of dancing. dancedancedance dancedancedance dancedancedance dancedancedance dancedancedance dancedancedance dancedancedance dancedancedance dancedancedance dance dance

dance
dance
dance
dance
dance
dance
dancedance
dance
dance
dance
dance
dance

Making sentences, finding sense

One way to make sentences (or, for that matter, sentence fragments) more expressive is to reinforce the sense of the words through type play. The examples shown here provide various methods of supporting (or subverting) the author's intent, by manipulating the size, weight, and placement of words.

The text in this sequence is taken from the *Déclaration des droits de l'homme et du citoyen* (Declaration of the Rights of Man and of the Citizen, 1789): 'Article 11. The free communication of ideas and opinions is one of the most precious of the rights of man. Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with freedom, but shall be responsible for such abuses of this freedom as shall be defined by law.'



Flush left

Article 11

The free communication of ideas and opinions is one of the most precious of the rights of man. Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with freedom, but shall be responsible for such abuses of this freedom as shall be defined by law.



Flush right

Article 11

The free communication of ideas and opinions is one of the most precious of the rights of man. Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with freedom, but shall be responsible for such abuses of this freedom as shall be defined by law.

Simply, set the text.

Or, perhaps, not so simply. When setting type in a field, it's useful to keep in mind the expression 'lines of type.' Compositionally, they operate on a page in much the same way that simple lines do in a basic design study, with two important exceptions:

- The Latin alphabet always reads left to right.
- 2

The quality of the line is determined by the size and weight of the typeface, by the inherent gray value of the typeface itself, and by the leading (space) between the lines of type.



Justified

Article 11

The free communication of ideas and opinions is one of the most precious of the rights of man. Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with freedom, but shall be responsible for such abuses of this freedom as shall be defined by law.

At actual size (36 picas square), type is 14/17 Janson.



Centered

Article 11

The free communication of ideas and opinions is one of the most precious of the rights of man. Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with freedom, but shall be responsible for such abuses of this freedom as shall be defined by law.



Narrow setting





Diagonal setting



Larger type

Placement of the type (see examples above) is as much about where type isn't as where it is. Designers working with type must always balance the importance of dynamic counterform with the need for type to remain readable; the most interesting composition may not be the most accessible.

Studies in perception have shown that readers' comprehension increases relative to the ease of scanning the text. In other words, fewer visual distractions lead to greater retention of content. This simple observation is most useful to keep in mind when setting extended text. Shorter settings such as we see here, however, reasonably allow for more 'play' in the presentation.

In short, while it may be possible to heighten meaning through distinctive and directed arrangement of type, direct consideration of the content and the reader should always be one's uppermost goals.

Sorticle 11
The free communication of ideas and opinions is one of the free communication of the rights of man. Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with freedom, but shall be responsible for such abuses of this freedom as shall be defined by law.

Article 11

The free communication of ideas and opinions is one of the most precious of the rights of man. Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with freedom, but shall be responsible for such abuses of this freedom as shall be defined by law.

Article 11
The free communication of ideas and opinions is one of the most precious of the rights of man. Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with freedom, but shall be responsible for such abuses of this freedom as shall be defined by law.

Article 11

The free communication of ideas and opinions is one of the most precious of the rights of man. Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with freedom, but shall be responsible for such abuses of this freedom as shall be defined by law.

Choosing an appropriate typeface depends on a number of factors, some of them seemingly contradictory: the content of the text, the tone of the author's voice, the period in which the text was written, and the intended audience. Each of the examples above speaks to some quality of the text.

Top left: the script setting (Kuenstler Script) reflects the original, calligraphed presentation of the text to Louis XVI. Top right: this 16th-century typeface (Adobe Garamond) is closely identified with classic French printing.

Bottom left: the design of this French typeface (Linotype Didot), was contemporaneous with the first publication of the text. Bottom right: a sans serif font (Univers 55) speaks directly to the modern audience. Article 11
The free communication of ideas and opinions is one of the most precious of the rights of man. Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with freedom, but shall be responsible for such abuses of this freedom as shall be defined by law.

Here we see two approaches that work against any serious communication. Top: a typeface so distinctive (Mistral) that it interrupts direct access to the content. Bottom: a 'formal' typeface (Trajan), set in all caps, that needlessly dresses up the text (what the French might describe as péter plus haut que son cul).

In both cases, before the reader can get to the matter, he or she must see through the effect of the type-faces themselves (in all likelihood, this also occurred when coming upon the script example on page 72). These examples highlight the problems inherent in using display typefaces for setting text (see page 14).

ARTICLE 11
THE FREE COMMUNICATION OF IDEAS AND OPINIONS IS ONE OF THE MOST PRECIOUS OF THE RIGHTS OF MAN. EVERY CITIZEN MAY, ACCORDINGLY, SPEAK, WRITE, AND PRINT WITH FREEDOM, BUT SHALL BE RESPONSIBLE FOR SUCH ABUSES OF THIS FREEDOM AS SHALL BE DEFINED BY LAW.

Article 11
The free communication
of ideas and opinions
is one of the most precious of the rights of man.
Every citizen may, accordingly,
speak, write, and print with freedom,
but shall be responsible
for such abuses of this freedom
as shall be defined by law.

Examine the syntax.

One way to make short text more expressive is to break it up for sense. In the example above, the two sentences in Article 11 have been set so that each line contains one discrete component of the thought.

The irregularity of the rag, something to be avoided assiduously in longer text settings, in this instance provides both cues for how to read the text and a lively interraction of form and counterform. Article 11
The free communication
of ideas and opinions
is one of the most precious
of the rights
of man.

Every citizen may, accordingly,
speak,
write, and
print with freedom,
but shall be responsible
for such abuses of this freedom
as shall be defined
by law.

Above, the idea is taken one step further by organizing the sense of the text both horizontally and vertically. Visualizing the syntax in this way generates rich, complex counterform on the page.

Text set in this manner is called asymmetric because it does not conform to the typical methods of typesetting displayed on pages 72 and 73. In practice, lines in asymmetric type are broken as much for appearance on the page as for the sense of the text.

Article 11
The free communication
of ideas and opinions
is one of the most precious of the rights of man.
Every citizen may, accordingly,
speak, write, and print with freedom,
but shall be responsible
for such abuses of this freedom
as shall be defined by law.

Find the core message.

Highlighting the key words in the text, by changing either their weight or their size, keys the reader in to the heart of the text, separated from its natural grammatical setting.

Notice that there is no shift from roman to italic. Despite its long use in text to call out certain words, phrases, and titles, italic does not provide enough visual difference from roman to serve the purpose of this exercise.

Above: A bold sans serif (Univers 75) has been paired with the roman (Linotype Didot). For a discussion of this approach, see pages 128-129.

Article 11
The free communication
of ideas and opinions
is one of the most precious
of the rights of man.
Every citizen may, accordingly,
speak, write, and print with freedom,
but shall be responsible
for such abuses of this freedom
as shall be defined by law.

Above: Change in scale highlights key phrases in the text.

Article 11

The free communication of ideas and opinions is one of the most precious of the rights of man.

Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with freedom,

but shall be responsible for such abuses of this freedom as shall be defined by law.

Combine scale and structure.

In the example above, the two previous strategies are combined. Both the organization of the text and the use of scale support the meaning.

Article 11

The free communication of ideas and opinions

is one of the most precious of the rights of man. Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with freedom, but shall be responsible for such abuses of this freedom as

shall be defined by law.

As you can see above, and as we have all seen in countless real world examples, scale, weight, and organization conspire to subvert the intended meaning of the text.

Type and color

As the previous examples demonstrate, typography continually offers the designer opportunities to exploit color on a page, even in a 'one-color' situation. Each typeface—assembled in regularly occurring lines, grouped into paragraphs and columns, or set in single words or simple phrases—creates a unique tone on the page. As the samples of Akzidenz Grotesk (right) demonstrate, changes in weight and compression or expansion of the letterforms all contribute to a palette of typographic tones.

Condensed

Akzidenz Grotesk Light

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-earniny art content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neathy identify the typographor's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of craft.

Akzidenz Grotesk Regular

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriete, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understandion of czaft.

Akzidenz Grotesk Medium

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most bentleth-ceatury art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three lenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of craft.

Akzidenz Grotesk Bold

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriets, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of craft.

Akzidenz Grotesk Extra Bold

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of craft.

Akzidenz Grotesk Super

Roman

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of traft.

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of craft.

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of craft.

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of craft.

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of craft.

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatily identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of

Italic

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of craft.

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twenti-eth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of craft.

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep understanding of craft.

Extended

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep under-

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message, intelligent economy of means, and a deep

The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentieth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message,

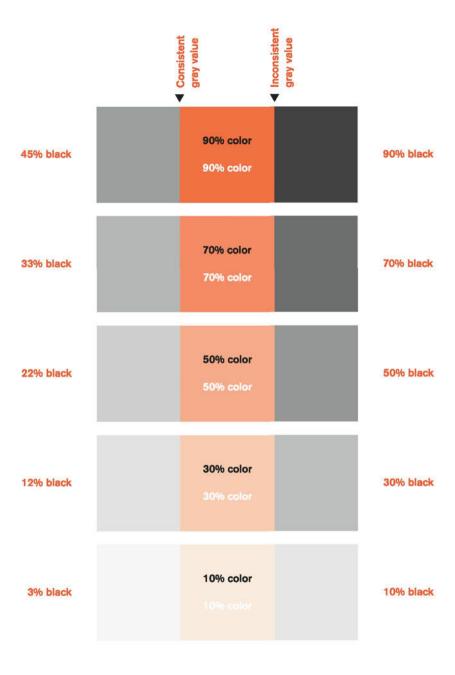
The guiding attitudes behind what follows are those that have vitalized most twentleth-century art: content dictates form; less is more; god is in the details. These three tenets neatly identify the typographer's job: appropriate, clear expression of the author's message,

In addition to properties best discussed elsewhere—hue, saturation, temperature—each color has a specific value, a tone that describes the color's weight on the page as a percentage of black.

Consider the color shown opposite, Pantone og2. Compare how the color meets black, white, and tints of black. We can see that it provides more or less the same contrast to white as to black, and neither advances nor recedes when seen next to a 50% screen of black. We can therefore describe it as having a gray value of approximately 50%.

Understanding—being able to see gray value contributes significantly to readability in simple 'two-color' printing situations.

This is a line of type 100% color 90% black This is a line of type This is a line of type 70% black This is a line of type This is a line of type 50% black This is a line of type This is a line of type 30% black This is a line of type This is a line of type 10% black This is a line of type This is a line of type i.....> 50% black This is a line of type



Because, as we already know, full saturation of our color has a gray value of 50%, it will always be lighter than a similar percentage of black. For example, 90% of this color has a gray value of more or less 50% x 90%, or 45%. Note that straight math is only an approximate indicator. Trust your eye.

Although ink on paper remains a strictly two-dimensional phenomenon, we can imply a sense of depth on any page by manipulating contrast between colors. As these examples show, greater contrast between colors suggests a greater distance from front to back, figure to ground if you will. Less contrast suggests proximity.

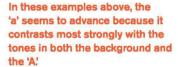
One obvious use of color is to reinforce typographic hierarchy. In the examples on this page the black 'a's, because they provide more contrast with the white background, are clearly more important than the red or gray 'a's.



























Here (above), the maximum contrast exists between the 'A' and the background. As a result, the 'a' tends to recede, confusing what appears to be the intention of the composition.

Although we tend to think of color as a way to highlight text elements within the black-and-white environment, the fact is that color—because it reduces contrast to the white background—often weakens readability, making text recede into, rather than advancing from, the page. See pages 127—129 for examples of how the convention of color contrast competes with the goal of emphasis.

Article 11

speak,

The free communication of ideas and opinions

write, and

is one of the most precious of the rights of man.

print

Every citizen may, accordingly, speak, write, and print with

with

freedom, but shall be responsible for such abuses of this

freedom

freedom as shall be defined by law.

Here, color and scale work together to reinforce the main thrust of the black text. If you can't make it good,
make it

If you can't make it big,
make it

red.

Here, simple contrast of scale, weight, and color is used to dramatic effect to demonstrate the idea of the statement. A characteristic of type design is that the letterforms themselves have evolved as a response to handwriting—the marks we make as we scrawl across a page. One of the identifiable features of those marks is that we make them as part of a horizontal flow, from left to right. This is something we all take for granted, as natural a part of written language as the use of upper- and lowercase.

Not all languages are written this way. Hebrew and Arabic, for instance, read right to left, and books in those languages begin at what we would consider the back. Look how illegible English would be if we encountered it set from right to left:

eb dluow hsilgnE elbigelli woh kooL thgir morf tes ti deretnuocne ew fi :tfel ot

Letterforms in typefaces have any number of attributes intended to reinforce the left-to-right flow of the written language: ascenders, descenders, consistent x-height, counters in lowercase forms typically appearing to the right. All these contribute to the sense of a line of text. And from the moment when we first learn to read, our brain assimilates these characteristics as essential for readable type.

Now to the point: written Chinese, unlike English, is not based on an alphabet; rather it is written in a series of characters called pictographs—forms that express an entire word or idea without necessarily indicating how to pronounce it.

Until recently, Chinese characters were typically read top to bottom, right to left, like this:

太守也太守謂 而 守 絲 野 溪 提 皆 賓 醉 非 粧 深 攜 畔 山客 也 竹 而 往 雜 也從已射 来景 魚 然 其 也 而 者 而 肥 而 樹 夕

The simple fact that all Chinese characters are drawn to the same width makes this reading very simple. You can see in the example above that the characters descending the page make natural and obvious columns.

Occasionally, you will come across English type that has been set like Chinese:

W w o o R r S s E e N n i N

As you can see, English letterforms are not all drawn to the same width. In left-to-right reading, the difference in widths presents no problem to readability; in fact, it adds to variety and color on the page. In vertical reading, all the type can do is create a shape. (Look at the profiles created by the difference between the wide W and the less-wide O, or between the N and the I.) When you consider that the primary purpose of type is to convey information with as little intrusion as possible, and that letterforms exist as a response to the lateral gestures of hand writing, then it should be clear that setting type vertically is inherently anti-typographic.

When the composition calls for vertical type, be mindful of the properties of the letterforms themselves, and set the type accordingly.

Improving

While you're at it, keep in mind how the baseline of the vertical type can, or cannot, relate to the vertical axes suggested by the rest of your type (in this instance, the left margin of the text).

Text

Tracking: kerning and letterspacing

Originally, the term 'kern' described the portion of a letterform that extended beyond the body of the type slug. As the example on the right shows, this adaptation was required in letterforms with angled strokes, so that spacing between letters within a word would remain optically consistent. Today the term 'kerning' describes the automatic adjustment of space between letters as prescribed by a table embedded within the digital font.

90

Because kerning removes space between letters, it is often mistakenly referred to as 'letterspacing.' In fact, letterspacing means adding space between letters, not removing it. For our purposes, the term 'tracking,' used in most computer programs that incorporate typesetting, best describes the addition or removal of space between letters. Keep in mind that even the best tracking table sometimes requires minor adjustments, especially at larger point sizes.



Without kerning



With kerning



Without kerning



With kerning

Yellow rifts

Normal tracking

Yellow rifts

Loose tracking (letterspacing)

Yellow rifts

Tight tracking (kerning)

As type size increases, particularly into display sizes of 24 pt. and up, it's often a good idea to tighten the tracking slightly.

91

step

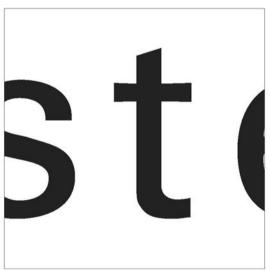


Univers 55

Normal tracking







Loose tracking

When setting text, tracking is critical to maintain easy reading. Note how loosely tracked text practically disintegrates right on the page, whereas tightly tracked text sacrifices readability as it comes to resemble no more than a series of stripes.

Normal tracking

Miss Brooke had that kind of beauty which seems to be thrown into relief by poor dress. Her hand and wrist were so finely formed that she could wear sleeves not less bare of style than those in which the Blessed Virgin appeared to Italian painters; and her profile as well as her stature and bearing seemed to gain the more dignity from her plain garments, which by the side of provincial fashion gave her the impressiveness of a fine quotation from the Bible—or from one of

Loose tracking

Miss Brooke had that kind of beauty which seems to be thrown into relief by poor dress. Her hand and wrist were so finely formed that she could wear sleeves not less bare of style than those in which the Blessed Virgin appeared to Italian painters; and her profile as well as her stature and bearing seemed to gain the more dignity from her plain garments, which by the side of provincial fashion gave her the impressiveness of a fine

Tight tracking

Miss Brooke had that kind of beauty which seems to be thrown into relief by poor dress. Her hand and wrist were so finely formed that she could wear sleeves not less bare of style than those in which the Blessed Virgin appeared to Italian painters; and her profile as well as her stature and bearing seemed to gain the more dignity from her plain garments, which by the side of provincial fashion gave her the impressiveness of a fine quotation from the Bible—or from one of the elder poets—in a paragraph of today's newspaper.

Designers often letterspace uppercase letters, but there has long been strong resistance within the type community to letterspacing lowercase letters within text. The reason for this resistance is quite clear if you look at the examples here. Uppercase forms are drawn to be able to stand on their own (consider their epigraphic origins). Lowercase forms require the counterform created between letters to maintain the line of reading (consider their origins in calligraphy).

Even though, when displayed alone and not as text, lowercase forms allow for some play in tracking, a moment occurs when readability is sacrificed for effect and meaning is lost.

IN MEMORIAM

In Memoriam

AFFLUENCE

affluence

EPISTEMOLOGY

epistemology

Formatting text

94 Flush left

This format most closely mirrors the asymmetrical experience of handwriting. Each line starts at the same point but ends wherever the last word on the line ends. Spaces between words are consistent throughout the text, allowing the type to create an even, gray value.

Flush left, ragged right (fl, rr) If you know Starkfield, Massachusetts, you know the post-office. If you know the post-office you must have seen Ethan Frome drive up to it, drop the reins on his hollow-backed bay and drag himself across the brick pavement to the white colonnade; and you must have asked who he was.

Centered

This format imposes symmetry upon the text, assigning equal value and weight to both ends of any line. It transforms fields of text into shapes, thereby adding a pictorial quality to material that is non-pictorial by nature. Because centered type creates such a strong shape on the page, it's important to amend line breaks so that the text does not appear too jagged.

Centered (cent.)

If you know Starkfield, Massachusetts, you know the post-office. If you know the post-office you must have seen Ethan Frome drive up to it, drop the reins on his hollow-backed bay and drag himself across the brick pavement to the white colonnade; and you must have asked who he was.

Flush right

This format places emphasis on the end of a line as opposed to its start. It can be useful in situations (like captions) where the relationship between text and image might be ambiguous without a strong orientation to the right.

Flush right, ragged left (fr, rl)

If you know Starkfield, Massachusetts, you know the post-office. If you know the post-office you must have seen Ethan Frome drive up to it, drop the reins on his hollow-backed bay and drag himself across the brick pavement to the white colonnade; and you must have asked who he was.

Justified

Like centering, this format imposes a symmetrical shape upon the text. It is achieved by expanding or reducing spaces between words and, sometimes, between letters. The resulting openness of lines can occasionally produce 'rivers' of white space running vertically through the text. Careful attention to line breaks and hyphenation is required to amend this problem whenever possible.

Justified (just.)

If you know Starkfield, Massachusetts, you know the post-office. If you know the post-office you must have seen Ethan Frome drive up to it, drop the reins on his hollow-backed bay and drag himself across the brick pavement to the white colonnade; and you must have asked who he was.

All text, 10/13.5 Janson

Designers tend to set type one way or another depending upon several factors, not the least of which are tradition and personal preference. Prevailing culture and the need to express oneself play important, inevitable roles in any piece of communication. However, when setting a field of type, keep in mind the typographer's first job-clear, appropriate presentation of the author's message. Type that calls attention to itself before the reader can get to the actual words is simply interference, and should be avoided. Quite simply, if you see the type before you see the words, change the type.

Anna Klein, Mitchell King

and their families

invite you to join them

in the celebration of

their wedding

23 June 2001 Village Hall Framingham Center 1:30 p.m. Reception to follow:

R.S. V. P.

Preconceptions about how something should look often interfere with effective, appropriate design of the message at hand. The formality of a wedding invitation, for example, is not necessarily tied to centered type—nor to script, for that matter.

Anna Klein, Mitchell King and their families invite you to join them in the celebration of their wedding. 23 June 2001 Village Hall Framingham Center 1:30 P.M. Reception to follow.

R.S.V.P.

Texture

g6 Beyond learning about the unique characteristics of each typeface and understanding its place in history—it's very important to understand how different typefaces feel as text. Different typefaces suit different messages. A good typographer has to know which typeface best suits the message at hand.

On pages 12–13 we discussed how typefaces 'felt' different from each other. On the next three pages, you can see how those ten typefaces compare with each other in identical text settings. Here you can see that the difference between typefaces is expressed not only in individual letterforms but also—and most importantly—in lines of type massed together to form blocks of text.

Consider too the different textures of these typefaces. Type with a relatively generous x-height or relatively heavy stroke width produces a darker mass on the page than type with a relatively smaller x-height or lighter stroke. Sensitivity to these differences in color is fundamental for creating successful layouts.

Call me Ishmael. Some years ago—never mind how long precisely—having little or no money in my purse, and nothing particular to interest me on shore, I thought I would sail about a little and see the watery part of the world. It is a way I have of driving off the spleen, and regulating the circulation. Whenever I find myself growing grim about the mouth; whenever it is a damp, drizzly November in my soul; whenever I find myself pausing before coffin warehouses, and bringing up the rear of every funeral I meet; and especially whenever my hypos get such an upper hand of me, that it requires a strong moral principle to prevent me from deliberately step-

10/13.5 Bembo

Call me Ishmael. Some years ago—never mind how long precisely—having little or no money in my purse, and nothing particular to interest me on shore, I thought I would sail about a little and see the watery part of the world. It is a way I have of driving off the spleen, and regulating the circulation. Whenever I find myself growing grim about the mouth; whenever it is a damp, drizzly November in my soul; whenever I find myself pausing before coffin warehouses, and bringing up the rear of every funeral I meet; and especially whenever my hypos get such an upper hand of me, that it requires a strong moral principle to prevent me from deliber-

10/13.5 Adobe Caslon

Call me Ishmael. Some years ago—never mind how long precisely—having little or no money in my purse, and nothing particular to interest me on shore, I thought I would sail about a little and see the watery part of the world. It is a way I have of driving off the spleen, and regulating the circulation. Whenever I find myself growing grim about the mouth; whenever it is a damp, drizzly November in my soul; whenever I find myself pausing before coffin warehouses, and bringing up the rear of every funeral I meet; and especially whenever my hypos get such an upper hand of me, that it requires a strong moral principle to prevent me from deliberately stepping into the

ing up the rear of every funeral I meet; and especially whenever my hypos get such an upper hand of me, that it requires a strong

10/13.5 Janson

10/13.5 Adobe Garamond

Call me Ishmael. Some years ago—never mind how long precisely—having little or no money in my purse, and nothing particular to interest me on shore, I thought I would sail about a little and see the watery part of the world. It is a way I have of driving off the spleen, and regulating the circulation. Whenever I find myself growing grim about the mouth; whenever it is a damp, drizzly November in my soul; whenever I find myself pausing before coffin warehouses, and bringing up the rear of every funeral I meet; and especially whenever my hypos get such an upper hand of me, that it requires a strong moral principle to prevent me from deliberately

mind how long precisely—having little or no money in my purse, and nothing particular to interest me on shore, I thought I would sail about a little and see the watery part of the world. It is a way I have of driving off the spleen, and regulating the circulation. Whenever I find myself growing grim about the mouth; whenever it is a damp, drizzly November in my soul; whenever I find myself pausing before coffin warehouses, and bring-

ing up the rear of every funeral I meet; and

especially whenever my hypos get such an upper hand of me, that it requires a strong

Call me Ishmael. Some years ago—never

Call me Ishmael. Some years ago—never

mind how long precisely—having little or no

money in my purse, and nothing particular

to interest me on shore, I thought I would

sail about a little and see the watery part of

the world. It is a way I have of driving off

the spleen, and regulating the circulation.

the mouth; whenever it is a damp, drizzly

Whenever I find myself growing grim about

November in my soul; whenever I find myself

pausing before coffin warehouses, and bring-

10/13.5 Monotype Baskerville

10/13.5 Bauer Bodoni

Call me Ishmael. Some years ago—never mind how long precisely—having little or no money in my purse, and nothing particular to interest me on shore, I thought I would sail about a little and see the watery part of the world. It is a way I have of driving off the spleen, and regulating the circulation. Whenever I find myself growing grim about the mouth; whenever it is a damp, drizzly November in my soul; whenever I find myself pausing before coffin warehouses, and bringing up the rear of every funeral I meet; and especially

Call me Ishmael. Some years ago—never mind how long precisely—having little or no money in my purse, and nothing particular to interest me on shore, I thought I would sail about a little and see the watery part of the world. It is a way I have of driving off the spleen, and regulating the circulation. Whenever I find myself growing grim about the mouth; whenever it is a damp, drizzly November in my soul; whenever I find myself pausing before coffin warehouses, and bringing up the rear of every funeral I meet; and especially whenever my hypos get such an upper hand of me, that it

10/13.5 Serifa

Call me Ishmael. Some years ago—
never mind how long precisely—having
little or no money in my purse, and
nothing particular to interest me on
shore, I thought I would sail about a
little and see the watery part of the
world. It is a way I have of driving off the
spleen, and regulating the circulation.
Whenever I find myself growing grim
about the mouth; whenever it is a damp,
drizzly November in my soul; whenever I find myself pausing before coffin
warehouses, and bringing up the rear
of every funeral I meet; and especially

10/13.5 Futura Book

Call me Ishmael. Some years ago—never mind how long precisely—having little or no money in my purse, and nothing particular to interest me on shore, I thought I would sail about a little and see the watery part of the world. It is a way I have of driving off the spleen, and regulating the circulation. Whenever I find myself growing grim about the mouth; whenever it is a damp, drizzly November in my soul; whenever I find myself pausing before coffin warehouses, and bringing up the rear of every funeral I meet; and especially whenever my hypos get such an upper hand of me, that it requires a strong

10/13.5 Univers 55

10/13.5 Meta Plus Normal

Typing is not typesetting

For the better part of the 20th century, the distinctive forms of typewriter type (notably its single character width and unstressed stroke) characterized the immediacy of thought: getting the idea down without dressing it up. Now that computers have replaced typewriters, most word processing programs default to Helvetica or Times Roman (or their derivatives) as the typographic expression of simple typing (see below). E-mail-currently the most immediate form of typed communication-appears on our computer screens as an electronically neutered serif or sans serif, any individuality scraped off in deference to the requirements of the pixel.

As a typographer, you should recognize the difference between typing and typesetting. Time and usage may ultimately make Inkjet Sans the expected typeface for letters. For now, however, on paper, typewriter type (like Courier, shown below) is still the best expression of the intimate, informal voice—direct address. Imitating the formalities of typesetting in a letter is always inappropriate because it suggests an undeserved permanence—the end of a discussion, not its continuation.

I have great trouble, and some comfort, to acquaint you with. The trouble is, that my good lady died of the illness I mentioned to you, and left us all much grieved for the loss of her; for she was a dear good lady, and kind to all us her servants. Much I feared, as I was taken by her ladyship to wait upon her person, I should be quite destitute again, and forced to return to you and my poor mother, who have enough to do to maintain yourselves; and, as my lady's goodness had put

10/12 Courier

I have great trouble, and some comfort, to acquaint you with. The trouble is, that my good lady died of the illness I mentioned to you, and left us all much grieved for the loss of her; for she was a dear good lady, and kind to all us her

10/12 Helvetica

I have great trouble, and some comfort, to acquaint you with. The trouble is, that my good lady died of the illness I mentioned to you, and left us all much grieved for the loss of her; for she was a dear good lady, and kind to all us her servants. Much I feared,

Leading and line length

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view—I mean of a practical scheme; but it has struck me that they sometimes throw off a bold conception—such as a man would not

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view—I mean of a practical scheme; but it has struck me that they sometimes throw off

10/10 Janson

10 pt. type

10 pt. line

10/11 Janson

10 pt. type

11 pt. line

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view—I mean of a practical scheme; but it has struck me that they sometimes throw off

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view—I mean of a practical scheme; but it has struck me that they sometimes throw off

10/10.5 Janson 10 pt. type

10.5 pt. line

10/11.5 Janson 10 pt. type 11.5 pt. line

The goal in setting text type is to allow for easy, prolonged reading. At the same time, a field of type should occupy the page much as a photograph does.

Type size

Text type should be large enough to be read easily at arm's length imagine yourself holding a book in your lap.

Leading

Text that is set too tightly encourages vertical eye movement; a reader can easily lose his or her place. Type that is set too loosely creates striped patterns that distract the reader from the material at hand.

Virtually every computer program assumes a default leading of 120% of type size (10 pt. type is set to a 12 pt. line, 12 pt. type is set to a 14.4 pt. line, etc.). If your program says your type is leaded to 'default,' fix it.

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view—I mean of a practical scheme; but it

10/12 Janson

10 pt. type

12 pt. line

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view—I mean of a practical scheme; but it

10/13 Janson

10 pt. type

13 pt. line

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view—I mean of a practical scheme; but it

10/12.5 Janson

10 pt. type 12.5 pt. line I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal

10/13.5 Janson

10 pt. type 13.5 pt. line

102 Line length

Appropriate leading for text is as much a function of line length as it is a question of type size and leading. Shorter lines require less leading; longer lines, more.

In general text settings—specifically not including captions and headlines—a good rule of thumb is to keep line length somewhere between 35 and 65 characters. In practice, limitations of space or the dictates of special use may require longer or shorter lengths. In any event, be sensitive to that moment when extremely long or short line lengths impair easy reading.

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view—I mean of a practical scheme; but it has struck me that they sometimes throw off a bold conception—such as a man would not have risen to—with singular serenity. "Simply ask them to take you in on the footing of a lodger"-I don't think that unaided I should have risen to that. I was beating about the bush, trying to be ingenious, wondering by what combination of arts I might have become an acquaintance, when she offered this happy suggestion that the way to become an acquaintance was first to become an inmate. Her actual knowledge of the Misses Bordereau was scarcely larger than mine, and indeed I had

10/12 Janson x 22p3

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view—I mean of a practical scheme; but it has struck me that they sometimes throw off a bold conception—such as a man would not have risen to—with singular serenity. "Simply ask them to take you in on the footing of a lodger"—I don't think that unaided I should have risen to that. I was beating about the bush, trying to be ingenious, wondering by what combination of arts I might have become an acquaintance, when she offered this happy suggestion that the way to become an acquaintance was first to become an inmate. Her actual knowledge of the Misses

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view—I mean of a practical scheme; but it has struck me that they sometimes throw off a bold conception—such as a man would not have risen to—with singular serenity. "Simply ask them to take you in on the footing of a lodger"—I don't think that unaided I should have risen to that. I was beating about the bush, trying to be ingenious, wondering by

10/12 Janson x 16p3

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view—I mean of a practical scheme; but it has struck me that they sometimes throw off a bold conception—such as a man would not have risen to—with singular serenity. "Simply ask them to take you in on the footing of a lodger"—I don't think that unaided I should have risen to that. I was beating about the

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view-I mean of a practical scheme; but it has struck me that they sometimes throw off a

10/12 Janson x 10p4

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who severed the Gordian knot. It is not supposed to be the nature of women to rise as a general thing to the largest and most liberal view—
I mean of a practical scheme; but it has struck me that

10/13 Janson x 16p3 10/13 Janson x 10p4

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiacing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh enismod tincidunt ut Isoreet dolore magna aliquam erat
volutpat. Ut visi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation
ullamenopre. Suscipit loboris nisti ut aliquip en ea commodo consequat.
Duis sutem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse
moleste consequat, vei illum dolore eu fengist nulla facilisis at vero
eros et socumaan. Isaxo odio dignissim qui blandit praesent lepatum
zail delenit augue duis dolore te fengist nulla facilisis at vero
eros et socumaan. Isaxo odio dignissim qui blandit praesent lepatum
zail delenit augue duis dolore te fengist nulla facilisis. Lorem ipsum
dolor sit amet, consecteturer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonumny nibh
enismod tincidunt ur lasoreet dolore magna aliquam erax volutpat. Ut
wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit loborts in situ aliquip en es commodo consequat. Duis auteut
en iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat,
vei illum dolore e fengist nulla facilisi. Nam liber tempor cum soluta nobis
eleifend option congou nibil imperdiet donning id quod mazim placerat
facer posum assum. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consecuturer adipisce
ingelt, sed diam nonumny mibb desismod tincidunt ur hierere dolore
magna aliquam erat voletpat. Ut wist enim ad minim veniam, quis nostund exerci stotio ullamcorper suscipit loborts in sit ut aliquip ex e a
commodo consequat. Dais autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in
vulputate velit esse molestic enocaquat, vel illum dolore e fengiat nulla
facilisis at vero eros et acumsan et iustro odio dignissim qui blandit;
praesent leptatum zzil delenit sugue duis dolore e fengiat nulla
facilisis at vero eros et acumsan et iustro odio dignissim qui blandit
praesent leptatum zzil delenit sugue duis dolore e fengiat nulla
facilisis at vero eros et acumsan et iustro odio dignissim qui blandit
dolor en efengiat nulla facilisis et vero eros et accumsan et iustro odio
dignissim qui blandit pr

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laorest dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper. Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis outern vel com itione dolor in hendresit in volcotate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugist nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan. Iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper sus cipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptutum zzzil delenit sugue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Nam liber tempor cum soluta nobis eleifend option congue nihil imperdiet doming id quod mazim placerat facer possim assum. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adip Lorem ipsum dolor

Compositional requirements

Text type should create a field that can occupy the page much as a photograph does. Think of your ideal text as having a middle gray value (above, left), not as a series of stripes (above, right).

It is often useful to enlarge type 400% on the screen to get a clear sense of the relationship between descenders on one line and ascenders on the line below. Here you can clearly see the difference one point of leading can make—a difference that is unrecognizable at 100% on most monitors.

Keep in mind that nothing replaces looking closely at an actual print-out of your work. The best screen is still an electronic approximation of the printed page.

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who invented the short cut, who

10/12 Janson @ 400%

I had taken Mrs. Prest into my confidence; in truth without her I should have made but little advance, for the fruitful idea in the whole business dropped from her friendly lips. It was she who

Kinds of proportion

106 A designer's first consideration is the size and shape of the page. Although practical limitations particularly economies of paperoften limit the designer's options, it is extremely useful to understand how the proportions we work with have evolved, and then to test your own responses against the received wisdom. Remember that these proportions-like so much else in typography and design in generalare the result of direct observation of, and interaction with, the world around us. Only your own practice and experimentation will give you a feel for what page size is most appropriate for each project.

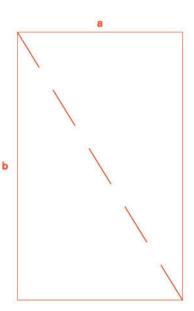
The golden section

A dominant influence on the sense of proportion in Western art is the golden section. The term 'golden section' describes a relationship that occurs between two numbers when the ratio of the smaller to the larger is the same as the ratio of the larger to the sum of the two. The formula expressing this relationship is

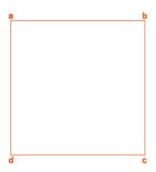
a : b = b : (a+b).

The aspect ratio described by a golden section is 1:1.618.

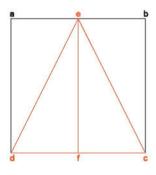
The golden section has existed as a model for proportion since classical times, employed by architects and visual artists in determining composition at all scales, from the shape of a page to the façade of a building. Its relation to contemporary graphic design, however, has become somewhat attenuated (see page 113).



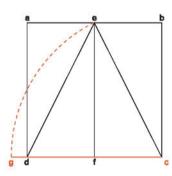
To find the golden section in a square:



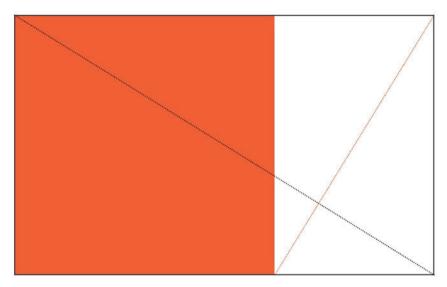
Draw the square abcd.



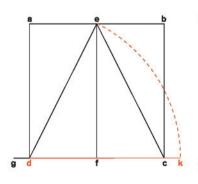
2
Bisect the square with line ef.
Draw an isoceles triangle cde.



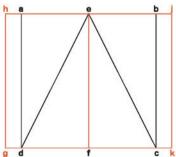
Project the line ce along the base of the square, forming line cg.



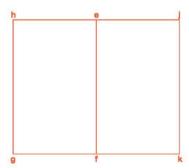
When you remove the square from a golden rectangle, you are left with another golden rectangle.



Project the line de along the base of the square, forming line dk.



Draw the new rectangles efgh and efkj.



Both rectangles **efgh** and **efkj** have the proportions of the golden section; the relationship of **eh** to **gh** is the same as the relationship of **gh** to **(eh + gh)**. Similarly, the relationship of **ej** to **jk** is the same as the relationship of **jk** to **(ej + jk)**—all are 1:1.618.

108 Fibonacci sequence

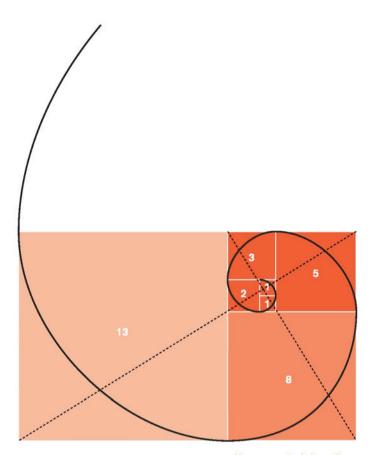
Another useful model when considering proportions is the Fibonacci sequence. Named for Italian mathematician Leonardo Fibonacci (c.1170–1240), a Fibonacci sequence describes a sequence in which each number is the sum of the two preceding numbers:

0 1 [1+0] 2 [1+1] 3 [1+2] 5 [2+3] 8 [3+5] 13 [5+8] 21 [8+13] 34 [13+21]

As the numbers in a Fibonacci sequence increase, the proportion between any two numbers very closely approximates the proportion in a golden section (1:1.618). For example, 21:34 approximately equals 1:1.618. Nature is full of examples of the Fibonacci sequence and the golden section, from the intervals of branches on a tree to the shell of a chambered nautilus.

Fibonacci's sequence always began with 1 but the proportion between any two numbers remains constant when the sequence is multiplied:

0	0	0
2	3	4
2	3	4
4	6	8
6	9	12
10	15	20
16	24	32
26	39	52
42	63	84
68	102	136
		•••



Above, a spiral describing a Fibonacci series (and the growth of a chambered nautilus). The red rectangle on the upper right approximates a golden section. As each square in the sequence is added, the orientation of the golden section changes from vertical to horizontal.



Left, one of the many examples of a Fibonacci sequence is the musical octave as seen on a piano—eight white keys and five black keys (separated into a group of two and a group of three). Series of type sizes based on a Fibonacci sequence:

The basic sequence (beginning at 1): 5 pt, 8 pt, 13 pt, 21 pt, 34 pt, and 55 pt.

The sequence doubled: 6 pt., 10 pt., 16 pt., 26 pt., 42 pt., and 68 pt.

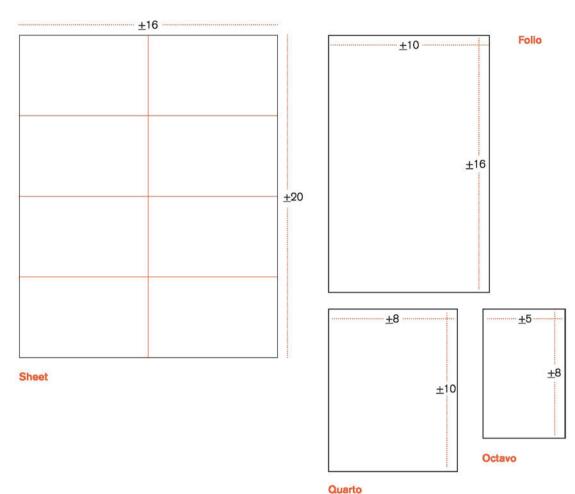
The first and second sequences interlaced: 6 pt, 8 pt, 10 pt, 13 pt, 16 pt, 21 pt, 26 pt, 34 pt, and 42 pt. AAA AA AA AA AA

AA AA AA AA AA AA

Compare with a straightforward arithmetic sequence (+5): 5 pt, 10 pt, 15 pt, 20 pt, 25 pt, 30 pt, 35 pt, and 40 pt.

Or, a geometric sequence (x2): 4 pt., 8 pt., 16 pt., 32 pt., and 64 pt. MAR AR AR AR AR AR AR AR

AAA Aa Aa Aa

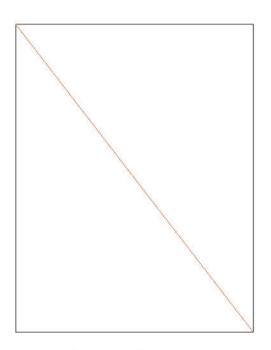


Traditional page sizes

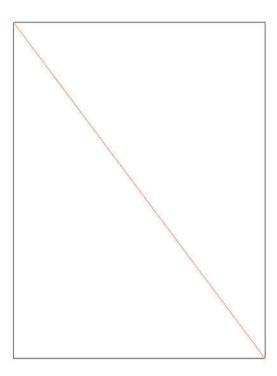
For the first 300 years of printing, the standard printing sheet ran anywhere between 16 x 20 in (406 x 508 mm) and 19 x 24 in (482 x 609 mm). Page sizes were referred to as folio (half sheet), quarto (quarter sheet), and octavo (eighth sheet). Specific dimensions of these page sizes varied according to size of the basic sheet. Note that only the folio and octavo sizes approximate the golden section.

Standard American paper sizes

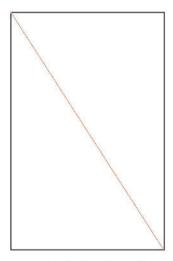
In American printing (and in those countries dependent upon American suppliers), most paper sizes are based on a page size of 8.5 x 11 in (216 x 279 mm) or 9 x 12 in (229 x 305 mm). As you can see opposite, these sizes derive from the traditional sheet, although they have been modified based on the economies of the current standard printing sheet. There is no longer any relationship to the golden section except for the 5.5 x 8.5 in (140 x 216 mm) sheet.



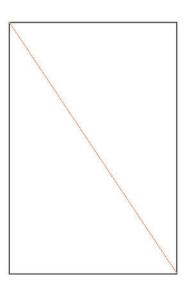
8.5 x 11 in (216 x 279 mm) sheet Aspect ratio 1:1.294



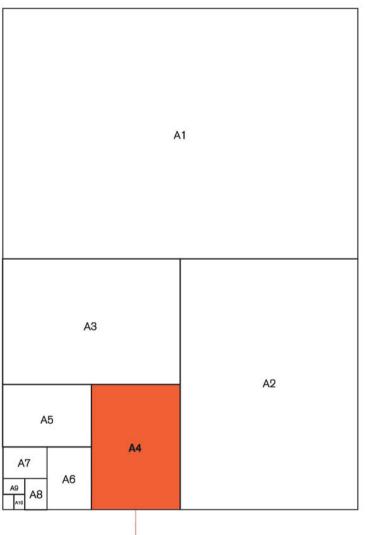
9 x 12 in (229 x 355 mm) sheet Aspect ratio 1:1.333



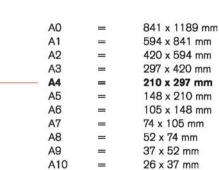
5.5 x 8.5 in (140 x 216 mm) sheet Aspect ratio 1:1.545



6 x 9 in (152 x 229 mm) sheet Aspect ratio 1:1.5



An A0 sheet, divided into component parts. An A0 sheet measures exactly 1m².

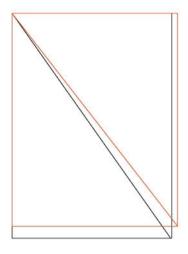


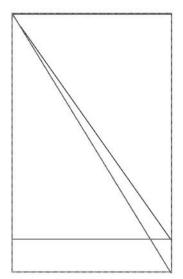
33.1 x 46.8 in 23.4 x 33.1 in 16.5 x 23.4 in 11.7 x 16.5 in 8.3 x 11.7 in 5.8 x 8.3 in 4.1 x 5.8 in 2.9 x 4.1 in 2 x 2.9 in

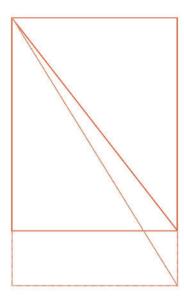
1.5 x 2 in

1 x 1.5 in

Approximate inches







Relative size and proportion of A4 (black), 8.5 x 11 in (216 x 279 mm; red), and golden section taken from A4 (dotted black) and 8.5 x 11 in (216 x 279 mm; dotted red)

European paper: the ISO system

In Europe—and many other parts of the world—paper sizes are based on what is called the ISO (International Organization for Standardization) system.

The ISO system was originated at the beginning of the 20th century by Nobel laureate Wilhelm Ostwald, who proposed an aspect ratio of 1 to the square root of 2 (1.414) as the basis for all printed matter—from postage stamps to oversized posters. The beauty of this ratio is that any sheet of paper trimmed to this format, when cut or folded in half, produces a sheet with exactly the same aspect ratio (1:1.414). The basic ISO sheet sizes are:

A0 (841 x 1189 mm) B0 (1000 x 1414 mm) C0 (917 x 1297 mm) In practical applications, the A series is the basic page size (A4 is the equivalent of the American 8.5 x 11 inch sheet). The B series is often used for books and flyers; this book is trimmed to the B5 format (6.9 x 9.8 in; 176 mm x 250 mm).

Other than the mathematical elegance of the ISO system and the possible esthetic preference for its proportions, nothing necessarily recommends ISO over American format other than use. And there is nothing to say that only standard sizes are appropriate for any particular task, as we shall see later.

Components of the text page

When designing a book with sequential text, we need to be familiar with the terms that describe what makes up a page.

Recto

The right-hand page. In book work, this page is always odd-numbered (i.e. page 1 is always a recto).

Verso

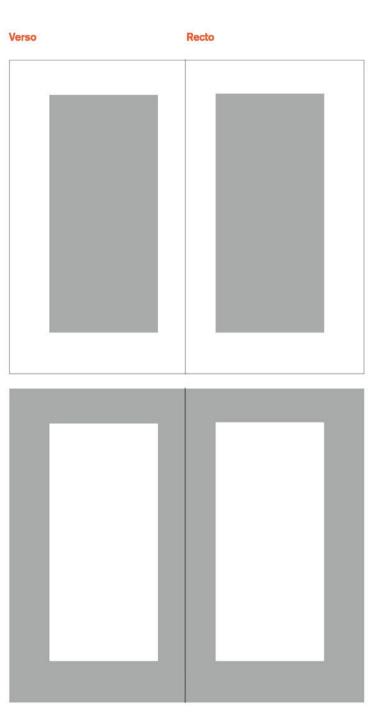
The left-hand page. This page is always even-numbered.

Text page

(Top) This is the area of the page that is used exclusively for text. The size of this area depends upon several factors: the size of the page itself, the size of the text type, and the length of a line of text. Common sense should dictate all three. For example, a book meant to be handheld can be much smaller than a book intended to rest on a flat reading surface. Text type should typically be readable approximately half a meter (19 inches) away from the eye. Finally, the ideal line length is no more than 65 characters maximum.

Margins

(Bottom) This is the part of the page where text isn't. This area must be large enough to accommodate any marginalia (see following), the amount of paper hidden by the book's binding, and, perhaps most importantly, the space needed for one's hands—specifically one's thumbs—to hold the book open without obscuring the text.

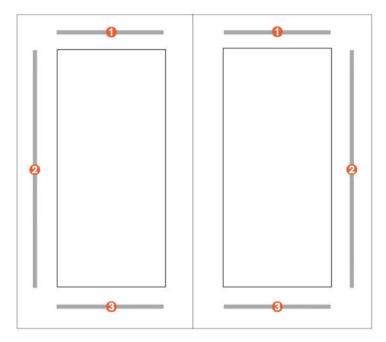


Top: A spread showing text pages

Bottom: A spread showing margins

Folios/headers

Folios (page numbers) and headers are material in the margins that tells the reader where he or she is in the text. Depending where on the page they appear, headers are referred to as running heads (top), running shoulders (sides), or running feet (bottom). Headers may display the book or part title on the verso and the chapter title on the recto, or chapter title on the verso and subsection title on the recto. Folios may appear in any of these locations. (See also pages 186–187.)



1 Running heads 2 Running shoulders 3 Running feet

15 1.5 horem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, prem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elic, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis aisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat.

Duis autem vel cum ririure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat suscipit obortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in bendrerit in vulnutare velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent laptatum zzeil delenit augue dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed dam nonummy nibh duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer dipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh 2 euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat euismod tincident ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in nendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Nam liber tempor cum soluta nobis eleifend option facilisi. Nam liber tempor cum soluta nobis eleifend option congue nihil imperdiet doming id quod mazim placerat congue nihil imperdiet doming id quod mazim placerat facer possim assum. Lorem insum dolor sit amer, consecteuer agipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquan crat facer possim assum. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismed tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisi ut aliquip ex exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea comprodo consequat. Duis autem vel som iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel ea commodo conseguat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore cu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero cros et illum dolore eu feugiae nulla facilisis at vero eros et ımsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit prae accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit prae Suptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla 3 3

Just as the golden section can be seen as one ideal of proportion, there is also an ideal layout based on the golden section. Shown above, this layout has been considered an ideal since the creation of illuminated books in the Middle Ages, although by the advent of printing it was a 'custom more honored in the breach than the observance' (Shakespeare).

The rules for this layout are simple:

The height of the text field equals the width of the full page (\longmapsto).

The placement of the text field is determined by the diagonals that describe both the page and the field.

The margins at the gutter of the spread (along the spine of the book) define 1 unit of measure. The margin at the top of the page equals 1.5 units. The margins to the outside of the page equal 2 units. And the margin at the bottom equals 3 units.

Note that part of what makes this layout appealing is the tension created by the different margins. Text occupies approximately 40% of the page area.

arem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laor dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorpe uscipit lobortis nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et josto odio dignis sim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augus duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laorest dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugrat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio argnissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Nam liber tempor cum soluta nobis eleifend option congue nihil imperdiet doming id quod mazim placerat facer possim m. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut lagreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper scipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis

orem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoi dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit labortis nisl ut aliquip ex ca commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignis sim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augus duis dolore te feugalt nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonu nibh euismod tincidunt at laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accum san et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Nam liber tempor cum soluta nobis eleifend option congue nihil imperdiet doming id quod mazim placerat facer possim assum. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipisc ing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignis sim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis

8.5 x 11 in (216 x 279 mm)

A4

The requirements of contemporary printing take us far away from the medieval ideal. The examples above show how the layout principle in the golden rectangle page (width of page equals height of text) do not convert to an 8.5 x 11 in (216 x 279 mm) or an A4 sheet. Clearly, the proportions of these pages require their own set of rules. We live in an era when xerography rules, and, as often as not, whatever comes most easily out of the copier or laser printer determines the most appropriate paper sizes-none of which approximates a golden rectangle.

Book printing allows for more freedom in choosing page sizes, but economies of paper typically demand far narrower margins and longer lines than the ancients would have tolerated (look at any textbook). Commerce demands printed pieces that are best suited to sizes and shapes of paper unimagined in 1455 (consider flyers, mailers, brochures, folders, schedules—and on and on). Very few of the messages in these pieces demand the kind of sustained reading best served by a single field of text carefully placed on the page.

So typographers now operate in a world where readability, meaning, clarity, and appropriateness are constantly being tested against the realities of the marketplace and the specific requirements of the page. Our task becomes that of applying what we can of the old principles to contemporary situations.

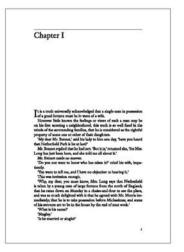
Because reading is a physical act, the first goal of designing text is to make the experience pleasurable. On the page opposite, a first page of text (in this case, Jane Austen's Pride and Prejudice) displays several of the considerations that contribute to successful text setting. Page size (B5) makes for a portable book, comfortable in the hand, easy to read in a variety of environments. Margins provide adequate room for the reader to hold the pages open without obscuring text. Type size and leading (11/14 Janson Text) is clear to the reader when the book is held at arm's length. Moderate line length (approximately 65 characters) helps prevent fatigue as the eye jumps from the end of one line to the beginning of the next.

While satisfying the larger requirements, text design allows for a variety of details that can ornament the page without intruding on easy, pleasurable reading. Some of the widely used options for chapter openers are displayed on this page.

Note that title pages do not have headers, but do have folios.



Text: flush left, ragged right Head: Centered, rule above Folios: Flush out



Text: Justified First line: Drop cap Head: Flush left, rule above Folios: Flush out Chapter I

Lit a work universally acknowledge that a single mass in possession of a good formate more be in work of well the house the follower of severe of such a single mass in the single mass in the second of the single way to be for the controllege and single market, the late of the single mass is the controllege and single market, the late on controllege and the single market, the late of the single market, the late of the single market of the late of the single market of the late of the

Text: flush left, ragged right First line: Centered indent with initial cap Head: Centered italic

Folios: Centered Italic



Text: flush left, ragged right, line space between paragraphs First line: Initial cap Head: Flush left Folios: Flush out

Opposite: Flush left head and text, paragraph indent 1 em. Note that the folio aligns visually with the right rag, not with the absolute right edge of the text page.

Chapter I

It is a truth universally acknowledged that a single man in possession of a good fortune must be in want of a wife.

However little known the feelings or views of such a man may be on his first entering a neighborhood, this truth is so well fixed in the minds of the surrounding families, that he is considered as the rightful property of some one or other of their daughters.

'My dear Mr. Bennet,' said his lady to him one day, 'have you heard that Netherfield Park is let at last?'

Mr. Bennet replied that he had not. 'But it is,' returned she, 'for Mrs. Long has just been here, and she told me all about it.'

Mr. Bennet made no answer.

'Do you not want to know who has taken it?' cried his wife, impatiently.

'You want to tell me, and I have no objection to hearing it.' This was invitation enough.

'Why, my dear, you must know, Mrs. Long says that Netherfield is taken by a young man of large fortune from the north of England; that he came down on Monday in a chaise-and-four to see the place, and was so much delighted with it that he agreed with Mr. Morris immediately; that he is to take possession before Michaelmas, and some of his servants are to be in the house by the end of next week.'

'What is his name?'

'Bingley.'

'Is he married or single?'

'Oh, single, my dear, to be sure! A single man of large fortune—four or five thousand a year. What a fine thing for our girls!'

'How so? How can it affect them?'

'My dear Mr. Bennet,' replied his wife, 'how can you be so tiresome? You must know that I am thinking of his marrying one of them.'

'Is that his design in settling here?'

'Design? nonsense, how can you talk so! But it is very likely that he may fall in love with one of them, and therefore you must visit him as soon as he comes.'

'I see no occasion for that. You and the girls may go, or you may send them by themselves, which perhaps will be still better; for as you are as handsome as any of them, Mr. Bingley may like you the best of the party.'

'My dear, you flatter me. I certainly have had my share of beauty, but I do not pretend to be anything extraordinary now. When a woman has five grownup daughters, she ought to give over thinking of her own beauty.'

'In such cases a woman has not often much beauty to think of.'

'But, my dear, you must indeed go and see Mr. Bingley when he comes into the neighborhood.'

'It is more than I engage for, I assure you.'

'But consider your daughters. Only think what an establishment it would be for one of them! Sir William and Lady Lucas are determined to go, merely on that account; for in general, you know, they visit no new-comers. Indeed, you must go, for it will be impossible for us to visit him, if you do not.'

'You are over-scrupulous, surely. I dare say Mr. Bingley will be very glad to see you; and I will send a few lines by you to assure him of my hearty consent to his marrying whichever he chooses of the girls; though I must throw in a good word for my little Lizzy.'

'I desire you will do no such thing. Lizzy is not a bit better than the others; and I am sure she is not half so handsome as Jane, nor half so goodhumored as Lydia. But you are always giving her the preference.'

'They have none of them much to recommend them,' replied he. 'They are all silly and ignorant like other girls; but Lizzy has something more of quickness than her sisters.'

'Mr. Bennet, how can you abuse your own children in such a way? You take delight in vexing me. You have no compassion on my poor nerves.'

'You mistake me, my dear. I have a high respect for your nerves. They are my old friends. I have heard you mention them with consideration these twenty years at least.'

PRIDE AND PRESUDICE

'Oh, single, my dear, to be sure! A single man of large fortune—four or five thousand a year. What a fine thing for our girls!' 'How so?! How can it affect them?' 'My dear Mr. Bennet,' replied his wife, 'how can you be so tiresome? 'You must know that I am thinking of his marrying one of them.' 'is that his design in settling here?'

CHAPTER ONE

'Design7 nonsense, how can you talk so! But it is very likely that he may fall in love with one of them, and therefore you must visit him as soon as he comes.'

'I see no occasion for that. You and the girls may go, or you may send them by themselves, which perhaps will be still better; for as you are as handsome as any of them, Mr. Bingley may like you the best

PRIDE AND PREJUDICE

'Oh, single, my dear, to be sure! A single man of large fortune —four or five thousand a year. What a fine thing for our girls!'
'How so? How can it affect them?'
'My dear Mr. Bennet,' replied his wife, 'how can you be so tiresome?
'You must know that I am thinking of his marrying one of them.'
'Is that his design in settling here?'

CHAPTER ONE

'Design? nonsense, how can you talk so! But it is very likely that he may fall in love with one of them, and therefore you must visit him as soon as he comes.'

I see no occasion for that. You and the girls may go, or you may send them by themselves, which perhaps will be still better; for as you are as handsome as any of them, Mr. Bingley may like you the best

PRIDE AND PREJUDICE

"Oh, single, my dear, to be sure! A single man of large fortune—four or five thousand a year. What a fine thing for our girls!" How 50? How can it affect them?"
"My dear Mr. Bennet," replied his wife, "how can you be so tiresome? You must know that I am thinking of his marrying one of them."
"Is that his design in settling here?"

CHAPTER ONE

'Design? nonsense, how can you talk so! But it is very likely that he may fall in love with one of them, and therefore you must visit him as soon as he comes.'

soon as he comes."
I see no occasion for that. You and the girls may go, or you may
send them by themselves, which perhaps will be still better; for as you
are as handsome as any of them, Mr. Bingley may like you the best

PRIDE AND PREJUDICE

'Oh, single, my dear, to be sure! A single man of large fortune—four or five thousand a year. What a fine thing for our girls?' How so?! How can it affect them?' 'My dear Mr. Bennet,' replied his wfle, 'how can you be so tiresome? You must know that I am thinking of his marrying one of them.' 'Is that his design in settling here?'

CHAPTER ONE

'Design? nonsense, how can you talk so! But it is very likely that he may fall in love with one of them, and therefore you must visit him as soon as he comes.'

I see no occasion for that. You and the girls may go, or you may send them by themselves, which perhaps will be still better; for as you are as handsome as any of them, Mr. Bingley may like you the best

PRIDE AND PREJUDICE

'Oh, single, my dear, to be sure! A single man of large fortune—four or five thousand a year. What a fine thing for our girls!' How so? How can it affect them?' 'My dear Mr. Bennet, 'replied his wife, 'how can you be so timsome? You must know that I am thinking of his marrying one of them.' 'Is that his design in settling here?'

CHAPTER ONE

'Design? nonsense, how can you talk so! But it is very likely that he may fall in love with one of them, and therefore you must visit him as soon as he comes.'

soon as he comes."
If see no occasion for that. You and the girls may go, or you may send them by themselves, which perhaps will be still better; for as you are as handsome as any of them, Mr. Bingley may like you the best

Opposite: Sans serif text (10.5/14 Meta Book) set flush left, ragged right, paragraph Indent 1 em. Note that the folio and running head align left with the text.

Above: Five simple variations on placement of running heads: centered, centered with rule above, flush out, flush left with rule above, and flush in with folios flush out. The possibilities go on.

It should be easy to imagine that the possibilities are just as numerous for placement of folios.

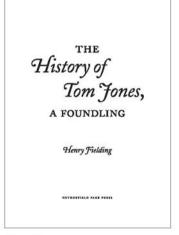
Front matter, back matter

Material preceding or following the text proper is called **front matter** and **back matter**. The content and sequencing of these pages has evolved over the centuries since Gutenberg, and continues to be adjusted to fit particular circumstances (the Table of Contents and Introduction in this book, for instance, begin on versos as opposed to rectos). Consider the list here to be suggestive, and, except for pages i—iv (half title through copyright page), not prescriptive.

Pages in front matter are numbered in lowercase roman numerals. Back matter pages continue the arabic numerals of the text. The visual presentation of these pages should grow logically out of the typefaces, type sizes, and margins used in the main body of the text.



Page i Half title



Page iii
Full title
(Page ii-frontispiece-is blank)



Table of contents

No matter where the front matter ends, remember that the text proper begins on page 1, which is always a recto.

Front matter

These pages include everything that precedes the first page of Chapter One.

i

Half title

(also called bastard title)

The first page, containing only the title of the book. No folio on this page.

ii

Frontispiece

Although typically blank, the page opposite the title page may display artwork. In some cases, it lists other books by the same author. No folio on this page.

III

Title page

The page shows the title, subtitle, author's name, and publisher. If the book is a new edition of a previous publication, the number of the edition will appear after the title. No folio on this page.

iv

Copyright page

This page lists the rights for the book, as well as any other important bibliographic information.

Dedication/epigraph/acknowledgments

This page is the author's chance to thank those who helped him or her, or to provide a quote that sets the tone for the text.

Table of contents

This page is treated as any first page in a chapter of text. The table of contents takes as many pages as required.

Foreword/introduction/preface

The foreword is typically written by someone other than the author. The introduction states the goals of the book. The preface describes the book's origins, and may include the acknowledgments.

Back matter

These pages round out the text, explaining technical terms, expanding notes, citing sources, cross-referencing important terms, and describing the physical production of the book. It may (but does not have to) include:

Appendix(ces) Addendum

This material is supplemental to, and typically supports, the main work.

Glossarv

This contains alphabetized definitions of words and terms central to a full understanding of the text.

Bibliography

This is a list, alphabetized by author, citing texts that inform, or have been quoted in, the book. It also includes websites, listed separately.

Footnotes

These may occur at the foot or the shoulder of the page where cited, at the end of the chapter, or at the end of the book.

Index

This is an alphabetized list of key names or terms used in the text, followed by the pages on which they appear.

Colophon

The colophon is a brief description usually located at the end of a book, describing production notes relevant to the edition and may include a printer's mark or logotype.

Indicating paragraphs

There are several options for indicating paragraphs. In the first example, (top left) we see the **pilcrow** (¶), a holdover from medieval manuscripts and seldom used today.

In the second example (top right), paragraphs are indicated simply by the start of a new line. If you employ this method, keep in mind that a long line at the end of one paragraph may make it difficult to read the start of the next. Similarly, a sentence within a paragraph that happens to fall at the beginning of a line may be mistaken for a new paragraph.

The example shown bottom left (and throughout this book) is a line space between paragraphs. Some designers occasionally set this space to be less than a full line, a solution that can be elegant in pages with a single column of text, but one that works against cross-alignment in layouts with multiple columns.

In the example bottom right, you can see the standard indentation. Typically, the indent is either an em—the size of the type—or the leading (as shown in this example—in this case, 13.5 pts.).

The nonsense words used on the pages shown here are called 'greeking,' despite the fact that most of the words are Latin or corruptions of Latin words. Typesetters have used greeking files to generate sample type since the 16th century. For the history and source of greeking, go to www.lipsum.com.

ullamcorper suscipit lobo ex ea commodo consegua vel eum iriure dolor in he tate velit esse molestie co dolore eu feugiat nulla fa et accumsan et iusto odic blandit praesent luptatun augue duis dolore. ¶ Ut minim veniam, quis nosti ullamcorper suscipit lobo ex ea commodo consegua eum iriure dolor in hend velit esse molestie consec dolore eu feugiat nulla fa et accumsan et iusto odic blandit praesent luptatun augue duis dolore te feug Nam liber tempor cum s eleifend option congue n doming id quod mazim p

Lorem ipsum dolor sit ar adipiscing elit, sed diam seuismod tincidunt ut laos aliquam erat volutpat. Ut minim veniam, quis nost ullamcorper suscipit lobo ex ea commodo consequa

Duis autem vel eum iriur drerit in vulputate velit e sequat, vel illum dolore e facilisis at vero eros et ac odio dignissim qui blandi tum zzril delenit augue d gait nulla facilisi. Lorem amet elit, sed diam nonu mod tincidunt ut laoreet quam erat volutpat.

Ut wisi enim ad minim v

Lorem ipsum dolor sit ar adipiscing elit, sed diam s euismod tincidunt ut laos aliquam erat volutpat.

Duis autem vel eum iriur drerit in vulputate velit e sequat, vel illum dolore e facilisis at vero eros et ac odio dignissim qui blandi tum zzril delenit augue d gait nulla facilisi.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit ar nonummy nibh euismod laoreet dolore magna alic pat.

Ut wisi enim ad minim v trud exerci tation ullamo lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex consequat. Duis autem v dolor in hendrerit in vul

Lorem ipsum dolor sit ar adipiscing elit, sed diam i euismod tincidunt ut laoi aliquam erat volutpat. Ut minim veniam, quis nost ullamcorper suscipit lobo ex ea commodo consequa

Duis autem vel eum it hendrerit in vulputate vel consequat, vel illum dolo facilisis at vero eros et ac odio dignissim qui blandi tum zzril delenit augue d gait nulla facilisi. Lorem amet elit, sed diam nonu mod tincidunt ut laoreet quam erat volutpat.

Ut wisi enim ad minir nostrud exerci tation ulla lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magn aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliqui ex ea commodo consequat.

Duis autem vel eum iriur dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accum san et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore.

Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullam-corper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex e commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nib euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobor tis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat.

Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit prae sent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore.

Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit ess

Above, two less predictable methods for indicating new paragraphs. In the first, type indents radically. This approach requires great care if the creation of widows (see page 136) at the end of the paragraph (as seen in the second paragraph above) is to be avoided. In the second example, the first line of the paragraph is **exdented** (as opposed to indented). This method creates unusually wide gutters between columns of text. Despite these problems, there can be strong compositional reasons for considering either option.

126

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consadipiscing elit, sed diam nonumm euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi eni minim veniam, quis nostrud exercullamcorper.

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriur hendrerit in vulputate velit esse mole quat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nul at vero eros et accumsan.

Iusto odio dignissim qui blandit p luptatum zzril delenit augue duis feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsun sit amet, consectetuer adiniscing Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, con adipiscing elit, sed diam nonumm euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi eni minim veniam, quis nostrud exercullamcorper.

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip commodo consequat. Duis auto eum iriure dolor in hendrerit i tate velit esse molestie consequillum dolore eu feugiat nulla fa vero eros et accumsan.

Iusto odio dignissim qui blandit p luptatum zzril delenit augue duis feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem insur

Italic type

Boldface serif type

Some simple ways to highlight content within a column of text are shown here. Note that different kinds of emphasis require different kinds of contrast.

In the first example, type is highlighted with italic, in the second with boldface. In terms of 'color,' the contrast established by the bold is obviously clearer. In the third example, a sans serif bold (Univers 75) is used instead of the bold serif type (Janson) for even stronger contrast. In this example, the size of the Univers 75 has been reduced to 8.5 pts. to make its x-height match that of the 10 pt. Janson (see detail opposite). Finally, the actual color itself is changed from black to red (refer to the discussion on page 85). Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consadipiscing elit, sed diam nonumm euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi eni minim veniam, quis nostrud exercullamcorper.

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip commodo consequat. Duis aute eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in tate velit esse molestie conseq illum dolore eu feugiat nulla fa vero eros et accumsan.

Iusto odio dignissim qui blandit p luptatum zzril delenit augue duis feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem insur Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, conadipiscing elit, sed diam nonumm euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi eni minim veniam, quis nostrud exercullamcorper.

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex modo consequat. Duis autem vel ure dolor in hendrerit in vulputat esse molestie consequat, vel illum eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero er accumsan.

Iusto odio dignissim qui blandit p luptatum zzril delenit augue duis feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem insur

Boldface sans serif type

Colored type

Lorepsum Lorepsum

Matching x-heights between typefaces. Top, 8.5 pt. Univers 75 against 10 pt. Janson. Bottom, 10 pt. Univers 75 against 10 pt. Janson. (Examples at 400%.) Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, con adipiscing elit, sed diam nonumm euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi eni minim veniam, quis nostrud exercullamcorper.

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex modo consequat. Duis autem vel ure dolor in hendrerit in vulputat esse molestie consequat, vel illum eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero er accumsan.

Iusto odio dignissim qui blandit p luptatum zzril delenit augue duis feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem insur Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, con adipiscing elit, sed diam nonumm euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi eni minim veniam, quis nostrud exercullamcorper.

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip e commodo consequat. Duis aute eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in velit esse molestie consequat, ve dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis a eros et accumsan.

Iusto odio dignissim qui blandit p luptatum zzril delenit augue duis feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem insur

Reversed type

Reversed, indented type

Here, the type has been highlighted by placing it in a field of color. In the first example, the type has simply been dropped out of a field the same color as the text. In the third example, the type is surprinted over a field in a second color. In both instances, the left axis of the type remains constant. The fields are expanded to accommodate the type. Keep in mind the importance of a gutter between columns large enough to allow space between two color fields.

Maintaining a consistent left type axis in these two examples facilitates reading, without compromising the purpose of the highlight. If the fields were to align with the text margins and the type subsequently indented (the second and fourth examples), reading suffers.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, con adipiscing elit, sed diam nonumm euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi eni minim veniam, quis nostrud exercullamcorper.

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex modo consequat. Duis autem vel ure dolor in hendrerit in vulputat esse molestie consequat, vel illum eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero er accumsan.

Iusto odio dignissim qui blandit p luptatum zzril delenit augue duis feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem insur Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, con adipiscing elit, sed diam nonumm euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi eni minim veniam, quis nostrud exerullamcorper.

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip e commodo consequat. Duis aute eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in velit esse molestie consequat, ve dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis a eros et accumsan.

Iusto odio dignissim qui blandit p luptatum zzril delenit augue duis feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem insur

Surprinted type

Surprinted, indented type

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consadipiscing elit, sed diam nonumm euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat:

- Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam
- Quis nostrud exerci tation ullar suscipit
- Lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea co consequat.

Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor i drerit in vulputate velit esse mole sequat, vel illum dolore eu feugia facilisis at vero eros et accumsan odio dignissim qui blandit praese tum zzril delenit augue duis dolor gait pulla facilisi. Lorem insum de Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, con adipiscing elit, sed diam nonumm euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat:

- Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam
- Quis nostrud exerci tation ullamo suscipit
- Lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea com consequat.

Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor drerit in vulputate velit esse mole sequat, vel illum dolore eu feugia facilisis at vero eros et accumsan odio dignissim qui blandit praese tum zzril delenit augue duis dolo gait nulla facilisi. Lorem insum d

Exdenting text

Sometimes it's necessary to place certain typographic elements outside the left margin of a column of type (exdenting, as opposed to indenting) in order to maintain a strong visual axis.

Notice, in the first example, that even though the bulleted list aligns with the left type margin, the bullets themselves produce obvious indents, thereby weakening the left axis. In the second example, the bullets have been exdented, maintaining the axis. "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, con adipiscing elit, sed diam nonumm euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi en minim veniam, quis nostrud exerullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ex ea commodo consequat.

"Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor drerit in vulputate velit esse mole sequat, vel illum dolore eu feugia facilisis at vero eros et accumsan odio dignissim qui blandit praese tum zzril delenit augue duis dolo gait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum d amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit diam nonumny nibh euismod tir

Quotation marks, like bullets, can create a clear indent when they are aligned with the text margin. Compare the exdented quote at the top of the column with the aligned quote in the middle.

This is a good time to point out that a prime is not a single quote or an apostrophe, nor are double primes quotes. Compare:



The prime is an abbreviation for feet or for the minutes of arc. The double prime is an abbreviation for inches or the seconds of arc. Because of the limited number of keys, they were used on typewriters as substitutes for single and double quotes and apostrophes, and came to be known as 'dumb quotes.' When used as quotes in typesetting, they aren't just 'dumb'—they're criminal.

Headlines within text

Many kinds of text have subdivisions within major sections (such as chapters), which are typically indicated by subheads within the text. These subheads are labeled according to the level of their importance: A heads, B heads, C heads, etc. (only the most technically written texts have three or more levels of subheads). The typographer's task is to make sure that these heads clearly signify to the reader both their relative importance within the text and their relationship to each other.

A heads

132

A heads indicate a clean break between topics within a section. They need to offer the reader a palpable pause, a chance to catch a breath. Space—typically, more than one line space—between topics clearly suggests this sense of resting. In the first examples here, A heads are shown set larger than the text, set in small caps, and set in bold. The fourth example shows an A head exdented to the left of the text.

euismod tincidunt ut laorec aliquam erat volutpat. Ut v minim veniam, quis nostru ullamcorper.

A head

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut alic modo consequat. Duis aute ure dolor in hendrerit in vi

euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magr aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper.

A head in bold

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea com modo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan.

Iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem euismod tincidunt ut laorec aliquam erat volutpat. Ut v minim veniam, quis nostru ullamcorper.

A HEAD IN SMALL CAPS

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut alic modo consequat. Duis aute ure dolor in hendrerit in vi

euismod tincidunt aliquam erat volut minim veniam, qu ullamcorper.

A head in bold

Suscipit lobortis n modo consequat. I ure dolor in hendi esse molestie cons eu feugiat nulla fa

B heads

Subordinate to A heads, B heads indicate a new supporting argument or example for the topic at hand. As such, they should not interrupt the text as strongly as A heads do. Here, B heads are shown in small caps, italic, bold serif, and bold sans serif.

aliquam erat volutpat. Ut w minim veniam, quis nostru ullamcorper.

B HEAD IN SMALL CAPS
Suscipit lobortis nisl ut alic
modo consequat. Duis aute
ure dolor in hendrerit in vi

aliquam erat volutpat. Ut w minim veniam, quis nostru ullamcorper.

B head in bold

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut alic modo consequat. Duis aute ure dolor in hendrerit in vi aliquam erat volutpat. Ut v minim veniam, quis nostru ullamcorper.

B head in italics

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliq modo consequat. Duis aute ure dolor in hendrerit in vi

aliquam erat volutpat. Ut v minim veniam, quis nostru ullamcorper.

B head in bold

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut alic modo consequat. Duis aute ure dolor in hendrerit in vi

C heads

Although not common, C heads highlight specific facets of material within B head text. They should not materially interrupt the flow of reading. As with B heads, these C heads are shown in small caps, italics, serif bold, and sans serif bold. C heads in this configuration are followed by at least an em space, to distinguish them from the text that follows.

aliquam erat volutpat. Ut w minim veniam, quis nostru ullamcorper.

c HEAD IN SMALL CAPS Susc ut aliquip ex ea commodo o autem vel eum iriure dolor vulputate velit esse molesti

aliquam erat volutpat. Ut w minim veniam, quis nostru ullamcorper.

C head in bold Suscipit le aliquip ex ea commodo cor autem vel eum iriure dolor vulputate velit esse molesti aliquam erat volutpat. Ut v minim veniam, quis nostru ullamcorper.

C head in italics Suscipit lol aliquip ex ea commodo cor autem vel eum iriure dolor vulputate velit esse molesti

aliquam erat volutpat. Ut w minim veniam, quis nostru ullamcorper.

C head in bold Suscipit l aliquip ex ea commodo cor autem vel eum iriure dolor vulputate velit esse molesti

134 Putting together a sequence of subheads: hierarchy

Here are three examples of subhead treatment within text. In the first, hierarchy of subheads is indicated by size and style of type. In the second, a hierarchy of consistently bold subheads is indicated simply by the relationship of head to text. In the third, hierarchy is established by color of type (bold/italic) and position relative to text.

Obviously, there is no single way to express hierarchy within text; in fact, the possibilities are virtually limitless. Once clarity has been established, the typographer can—and should—establish a palette of weights and styles that best suits the material at hand and the voice of the author.

euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi eni minim veniam, quis nostrud exerc ullamcorper.

A head

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex modo consequat. Duis autem vel ure dolor in hendrerit in vulputat esse molestie consequat, vel illum eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero er accumsan.

B HEAD IN SMALL CAPS

Iusto odio dignissim qui blandit p luptatum zzril delenit augue duis feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsun sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing diam nonummy nibh euismod tin laoreet dolore magna aliquam era pat.

C head in italic Ut wisi enim ad n veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation corper suscipit lobortis nisl ut alic commodo consequat. Duis autem iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulpur euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolo aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi eni minim veniam, quis nostrud exerc ullamcorper.

A head in bold

Suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex modo consequat. Duis autem vel ure dolor in hendrerit in vulputat esse molestie consequat, vel illum eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero er accumsan.

B head in bold

Iusto odio dignissim qui blandit p luptatum zzril delenit augue duis feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsun sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing diam nonummy nibh euismod tin laoreet dolore magna aliquam era pat.

C head in bold Ut wisi enim ac veniam, quis nostrud exerci tatior corper suscipit lobortis nisl ut alic commodo consequat. Duis autem iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulpu euismod tincidunt i aliquam erat volutp minim veniam, quis ullamcorper.

A head in bold

Suscipit lobortis nis modo consequat. D ure dolor in hendre esse molestie conse eu feugiat nulla faci accumsan.

B head in bold

Iusto odio dignissin luptatum zzril deler feugait nulla facilisi sit amet, consectetu diam nonummy nib laoreet dolore magi pat.

C head in italic Ut veniam, quis nostru corper suscipit lobo commodo consequa iriure dolor in hencesse molestie conse eu feugiat nulla faci

Widows and orphans

In traditional typesetting (the kind that still endures among fine book publishers and conscientious commercial publishers), there are two unpardonable gaffes—widows and orphans.

A widow is a short line of type left alone at the end of a column of text. An orphan is a short line of type left alone at the start of a new column. (An easy mnemonic device: orphans start out alone, widows end up alone.) Consider the example opposite. You know already that text is meant to read as a field of a more-or-less middle tone. You can see how an unusually short line at the top or bottom of a paragraph disrupts that reading—in fact, creates a shape that draws attention away from simple reading.

In justified text, both widows and orphans are serious gaffes. Flush left, ragged right text is somewhat more forgiving toward widows, but only a bit. Orphans remain unpardonable.

The only solution to widows is to rebreak your line endings throughout your paragraph so that the last line of any paragraph is not noticeably short. Orphans, as you might expect, require more care. Careful typographers make sure that no column of text starts with the last line of the preceding paragraph.

Eleifend option congue nihil imperdiet doming id quod mazim placerat facer possim assum. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonumny nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisì ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatore.

zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla racilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit met, consectetuer adip Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea con modo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iri-ure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero cros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip si. Nam

liber tempor cum soluta nobis eleifend option congue nihil imperdiet doming id quod mazim placerat facer possim assum. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adip

Two widows and an orphan (above).

Columnar organization

Lorens ipsum dolor sit ames, consecutave adajasing elle, sed diem nomanumy subh enimend encident en i lorent dolor maga aliquam rest velorpest. Ut wis elle mai an innim wentum, gui nomed earest intro- dunctore per sodie; belouw inter wel en mitiere dolor in handweit in wigntat welle me minietre compensat, well dim dolore me fregate milis facilités ar twee error es accumann me i intro colo di faginismi que libenti persente hypotats welle me minietre conseque, vel illim dolore me fregate milis facilités ar twee error es accumann me i intro colo di faginismi que libenti persente hypotam suril defenit sugue dun dolore se fregate milis facilité. Lorens puen dolore sit mone, consecutave me vel ense interne dolore maga aliquam est velorpest. Ut wist einma a minim wentum, qui nomered essere daton illencooper mangin illegum est velorpest. Ut wist einma a minim wentum, qui nomered essere daton internedore maga aliquam est velorpest. Ut wist einma a minim wentum, qui nomered essere daton illencooper mangin illegum est velorpest. Ut wist einma al minim wentum, qui nome essere dolore maga aliquam est velorpest que dun dichare te freque timb facilité. Nem libre remper com solara nobis elimite option commença tibil impossite dennis per me dolor si men commença vella dissolute te freque tibil pod manten placeme tiere possite susann. Loren tiber dolore mengas aliquam est velique. Ut visi einma de minim vellam, qui and disson momença vella delicite si velique to se commendo consequer. Della mental vellam della mental mental vellam della restre delicite in service unitation della minim vellam, qui and disson momença vella delicite in terre delicite aver ever one concentrate militiere delicite in bamelteri in veliqueta en minima delicite service est commental facilité. Lorens ipum dolor si teme, consecuteres eliple control delicite serve ever est excumans me interne dolor in handweit in velique me consende consequer. Della mental velicite me della mental mental della restrate della restrate mental facilités aver

Lorem ipseum doine sit ames, consecurater adipicing all, sed diam nonmany this shaimed statement of the stat

A two-column layout

A three-column layout

It is often useful to think of your text area divided into columns—consistent horizontal intervals that allow for more than one field of text per page. Working with columnar layouts helps you maintain a manageable line length and allows white space onto the page in places other than the margins. Keep in mind the dynamic relationship between type size, leading, and line length. Altering the last always affects the first and the second.



Lorem ipsum dolor sit runt, conmonotore algorithms of the control of the contro

A five-column layout

Notice how a five-column layout allows for two fields of text and a third, narrower field for secondary information, such as notes, author profile, etc. The narrower field may in fact be too narrow for any kind of sustained reading.

An eight-column layout

You can see how this application does much the same as a five-column layout, with slightly narrower fields of text and a wider field for supplemental information. Obviously, many other variations are possible.

140 Horizontal layouts allow for wider fields of text, which tend to support sustained reading more comfortably than narrower fields.



A two-column layout

Lorem ipsum dolor	sit amet	
Lorens ignum dolor alt unset, consectenuer eligino- leg elig, and diem consummy sibb estimated the oldman tel incere delore magna falspens artiv who- per. Ut will exist and dishib workers, with one search often and delore telegraphic production of the search often dishibated and ut- market with existing and dishibated and ut- served telegraphic search of the search often dishibated and ut- served telegraphic search telegraphic analis facilities, and the search of the search	dian accummy nibh suismod tiacidnat or loovert dolore magus aliquan sert volteget. Ut wide sein de tinish versien, qui account care volteget activate de la comparation de la	loborais sial est häppig est en commodo connequent. Dade sattem vel euro hister de duri is hendrett in

A three-column layout

	Lorem ipsum dolor sit a	met
Law or instead of the contract	Learns (peum dolor sit sure, rouscervers skiplesing elle, sed diem neuersmy skib enismed thisbine et houset dolor saagus silyam een volupus. IV-visi erin ad minist venkas, quit noureal enter them financepe trained thisbine et silyapis en en commode neuergest. Dais sutten wit euen hister et skippis en en commode neuergest. Dais sutten wit euen hister et alle de la commode et silyapis en en commode neuergest. Dais sutten wit euen hister et ditten dolore en fengle mild facilité en vero cont excensem et suns odios diguisten qui biendir prosecci lepterum sezi delinat inque de la colore en fengle mild facilité. Levum peum dolore si trans, commontente et lépicieig elle, and diem nomembre synthemes de la colore en fengle mild facilité. Levum peum dolore si trans, commontente et lépicieig elle, and diem nomembre synthemes et la colore en seguit middent et la leveré dolore angua aliquem sur serve de la colore en fengle mild facilité es levue en siture dolor in lescolare en fengle mild facilité es levue en a secument et de la colore en fengle mild facilité es levue en a secument en la colore de la colore en fengle mild facilité es le vour en de membre de la colore en fengle mild facilité es le vour en de membre de la colore en fengle mild facilité es le vour en a secument en de la colore en segue mild impedient denomination et la colore en fengle mild en delle no neuer veloupen. Un viet enter el doit en segue et velopent. Un viet enter al ministre velour en algement extre velopent. Un viet ente an alterior enter, que anormal concentral en historia de la levue en colore de la colore de la colore de la colore de la colore de colore en la colore de la col	delore en freugles stalls feelliks at vervo erro et recumsan et lastro odio digularito qui blavilit girassest hiptirum suri delle la segue duis delore su freugles stalls feellik. Lorens jumm delore state que della stalla feellik lorens jumm delore state sono entereror silupinente per la commentare silupinente della minimate sono entereror silupinetta della solicita situation della silupine es a commondo consequent. Dais samme et ema intiri solicita in handeristi in veligione. Dais samme et ema intiri solicita in handeristi in veligione. Dais samme et ema intiri solicita in handeristi in veligione. Dais samme et ema estate si tento colici digitalismi deliri della solicita della silupita esta veligione et seguita difficulta della solicita della silupita esta veligione della solicita della sol

A five-column layout

	Lorem ipsum dolor	sit amet	
Earne ignes date de mon. manutur sellating de, ar- manutur sellating	Loven jasom dolor sir smel, consecuteure nilpine- ling sili, sed dista nonumeny sibb enismod tir- cichatu ti hacean chicer engasa silipsam eres win- pera. Ut wit denism di misham venism, sici a normal- silipsi se ca commodo conseque Dale satema via silipsi se ca commodo conseque Dale satema via dademis negar dish dolor se in fequit unila facilia. Loverni jasom dolor en inset, consecutare nilpine- lage disposa della solica silipsi silipsi sono con- cidant un insense dolor en inset, consecutare nilpine- lage disposa della solica silipsi sono con- cidant uni kaneste dolor engasa silipsim este viden- gat. Ut wit enim ad misham vendam, quin normal- dazioni tira della silipsimi si vidgimate vella men- landi silipsimi si di silipsimi si vidgimate vella men- modorico conseque. Dale solica sea fengia: mish facilitate et vero cesa e commanne ri sinto odi- digisation qui bitandi personale legare ma calila. Non liber tempor cum solvin subte delicatal option conque sili largaritete chessiga di quod manismi polocere fore pondei suem. Leven ipsom delor et mene, concentrante delicitare di, sint	diam norsamay alish esismoid tincident ut laceout dolore magna ellegars out voltrigat. Ut wid erins ad mirins westen, quin nouvel assert utaton ulfantive venians, quin nouvel assert utaton ulfantiverse margin licherte in al se fairige o at commerce average margini before in al se fairige o at commerce average and a service even excursant et timo ollo dignissim qui labandir passente hipportune site dolore in certa della facilità as avec even exocursant et timo ollo dignissim qui labandir passente hipportune site dolore del marco, consecutator allip acom i passo dolore del marco, consecutator allip acom i passo dolore al marco, consecutator allip acom i passo dolore ano magna adqueste eve ordigate; il cui si datas monumay subb voltamo discissim estato, consecutator alliperin este della cinima della marco dolore magna adqueste eve ordigate. Ut vide attento della marco do consequenta voltami este dolore in humano della consecutation del	Leaves lipions delay al man, man men melle all man and man men melle all man and man and man and man and man and man and man and man and man and man and man and man and man and man and man and man and man and man and man

A six-column layout Six columns allow for two wide fields and two narrow fields per page, which can be useful in heavily annotated documents.

Even Josephin de Maria de Mari	Learn have risk for the core, summers and policy at the color and control and color an	deleter on finglish milk fieldig in upon som en entention et in time och spilajate och fieldig in upon som en entention et lipsom delete der une, consentioner delle Leven hyper delete lipsom delete de une, consentioner delle Leven hyper delete deleter deleter deleter deleter deleter delleter deleter deleter sombigen. Det bette deleter deleter deleter deleter deleter whitepas. Leven deleter delet	Learnin journe de la rete, consequence en algolisatique de, aux demans consequence del mantant de la learne de la come dela come de la come del	have a find inglinate of Visionis present supposes and fide- its required ballows in Sequiposi has Media. Carron Joseph I seguine thin Allows in Sequiposi has Media. Carron Joseph I seguine thin Allows in Sequiposi has Media. Carron Joseph Carron Sequiposi (Allows and Sequiposi (Allows and Sequiposi) to the Carron Sequiposi (Allows and Sequiposi) supposition of the Sequiposi (Allows and Sequiposi) supposition of t	
	Lorem ipsum dolor sit an	lag.			

Low security of the section of the s	After all some medical consequent. After the second	memora ediplate de compression de la compression de la compression de compression	may de, and dam not- model disablem or deside and the second of the seco	a dator in Indianata in religione con relative consequenti del	

Most often, text layouts will involve spreads (two facing pages) and not single sheets. Always keep the spread in mind when you're setting up your page. You can see here how different a spread of horizontal pages (top) feels from a spread of vertical pages (bottom).

	Lorem ipsum dolor sit a	met			
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet	Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, con- sectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna silguam crat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamoorper suscipit lobortis nisil ut aliquip er ea commodo con- sequat. Duis autem wel eum iriture	Consectater adiplecing elit	Nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volut- pat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud eserci taiton ullamoor- per suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hen- drenti in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum	Ut wisi enim ed minim	Lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea com- modo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in henderit in vulputate velit esse molestie conse- quat, vei illum dolore en feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accum- san et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit
	sequit. Due autem ve cam fruire dolor in hendreit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore cu freguat mulla facilisia at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zaril delenit iague duis dolore te feugati nulla facilisi. Loren ipsum dolor sit amet, consecteuter adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibb euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna altumam		motions consequency ver inten- dolore en fengiar nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent lup- tatum zaril delenit augue duis dolore te fengiat nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, con- sectetuer adip Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing clit, sed diam nonunmy nibh euis- mod	Veniem quis nostrud exerci tati	Praesent lupratum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Nam libet tempor cum soluta nobis eleifend option congue nihil imperdiet doming id quod mazim placerat facer postim assum. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, con- sectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutari. Ut wis enim ad
	ut isoreet dotote magna auquam erat voltupta. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamoroper suscipit loborits nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo con- sequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendreit in vulputate velit esse molestic consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat mulla facilisia et vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent lup- tatum zuril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Nam liber tempor cum solutu nobis eleifend option conque nibil imperdiet doming id quod mazim placerat facer possim assum. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy	Sed diam nonummy nibh	mod Tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tution ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nial ut aliquip ex ex com- modo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie conse- quat, vei illum dolore eu freugiat mulla facilisis at vero eros et accum- san et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit preseent huptatum zuri delenit augue duis dolore te fengiat mulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consecteure adipiscing elit, sed diam nonumny nibh euismod		erat volupat. U was enim au minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu frugiat mulla facilisia at vero eros et accumsan et insto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zazil deleniti sugue tiusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zazil deleniti sugue tunto dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consecteute adip Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consecteuter adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut

Columnar layouts are effective for many different formats. Above, a three-column layout is applied to each of the three panels on an 8.5 x 11 in (216 x 279 mm) sheet.

Cross-alignment

144 **Euismod tincidunt ut laoreet** dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait

nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Nam liber tempor cum soluta nobis eleifend option conque nihil imperdiet doming id quod mazim placerat facer possim assum. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam,

7/9 Univers 75 x 10p4

10/13.5 Janson x 22p3

Cross-aligning headlines and captions with text type reinforces the architectural sense of the page—the structure—while articulating the complementary vertical rhythms. In this example, four lines of caption type (leaded to 9 pts.) cross-align with three lines of text type (leaded to 13.5 pts.).

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer quam erat volutpat.

Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo conseguat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et

24/27 Janson x 16p (top) 14/18 Univers 75 x 10p4 (bottom) 10/13.5 Janson x 16p

Above, (top left) one line of headline type cross-aligns with two lines of text type, and (bottom left) four lines of headline type cross-align with five lines of text type. Later on, we'll look at ways of choosing proportional text sizes. For now, it's important simply to keep in mind this relationship between different leadings.

Expressing hierarchy

In most circumstances, a designer's first goal is to make material comprehensible to a reader. In other words, you should understand the material well enough to know how someone else needs to read it to make the best sense out of it. This understanding happens on two levels: content and form.

The recipe on the right is a fairly straightforward presentation of the making of an apple tart. With the exception of one or two terms specific to cooking, its content does not require any special knowledge. However, in its form—the manner in which information is set and placed on a page—the process it describes can be made clearer than it appears as plain typescript.

To understand the form, you must first understand the kinds of information the recipe contains and then rank them according to levels of importance, thereby creating a hierarchy. In this recipe there are the following levels of information:

title (1) subtitles (2) text (3)

Within the text there are:

ingredient lists (3A) oven temperature instructions (3B) directions (3C)

Successfully setting this recipe in type requires that you make each of these distinctions clear to the reader. Using some of the kinds of contrast discussed on pages 62–63 and the methods outlined on pages 132–135 will help you express these distinctions.

Apple tart

The shell

- 7 tablespoons frozen butter*
- 1 cup frozen flour*
- 3 tablespoons ice-cold water*
- 1 teaspoon cider vinegar
- A pinch of kosher salt
- * It is important to have these ingredients as cold as possible.

Preheat the oven to 400°.

In a food processor fitted with a steel blade, combine all the ingredients until they form a solid mass that rises above the blade. You can add extra water by the tablespoon if the mass does not congeal within the first minute. Tiny pieces of butter should still be visible in the dough when it's done. Remove the dough from the bowl and work it quickly into a ball on a lightly floured surface. Cover with plastic wrap and refrigerate for at least half an hour.

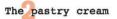
After the dough has rested in the refrigerator, roll it out on a lightly floured surface until it forms a circle approximately 13 inches in diameter. Center the circle of dough in a 10-inch tart pan with a removeable bottom. Use your knuckles to make sure that the dough tucks neatly against the edge of the pan and run the rolling pin around the rim to remove the excess. Cover and refrigerate again for at least half an hour.

Line the tart shell with aluminum foil, being careful to cover the edges. Pierce the aluminum and the dough several times with a fork and fill the shell with dried lentils. Bake for 20 minutes. Remove the aluminum and the lentils and continue baking until the shell is golden brown, about 15 minutes more.

The apples

6 Granny Smith apples
Juice of one lemon
Cinammon to taste
Nutmeg to taste

Peel, core, and halve the apples. Either by hand or with a food processor, cut the apple halves cross-wise into thin (less than 1/4-inch) slices. In a large bowl, toss the apples in the lemon juice, cinammon, and nutmeg. Cover and set aside.



Unset text (left and opposite)

- 1/4 cup sugar
- 1 tablespoon flour
- 2 teaspoons cornstarch
- 1 large egg
- 1 cup milk
- 3 tablespoons unsalted butter
- 1/4 teaspoon vanilla extract

Sift the sugar, flour, and cornstarch together into a mixing bowl. Add the egg and beat until light. In a heavy-bottomed saucepan, bring the milk to a boil. Stir half the milk into the egg mixture, then pour the whole mixture back into the saucepan. Cook over high heat, stirring constantly, until the center bubbles and the mixture is very thick. Remove from heat and stir in the vanilla and the butter. Pour the pastry cream into a bowl, cover tightly with plastic wrap, and refrigerate. (Be sure to press the plastic wrap right onto the cream to prevent a skin from forming.)

The assembly and baking

2 tablespoons sugar
8 ounces current jelly

Preheat the oven to 375°.

Spread the pastry cream over the bottom of the shell. Arrange the apple slices in a circle around the outer edge of the shell, making sure the slices overlap. When the outer circle is completed, make a smaller circle, overlapping about half of the outer circle. If there's room, make a third circle. Fill the hole in the center with pieces of a few slices—let them stand upright. Cover the tart with a circle of wax paper and bake for 25 minutes. Remove the wax paper and sprinkle the sugar over the apples. Bake uncovered for 5-10 minutes more, until the sugar melts.

Boil the currant jelly until it reduces by one-third. With a pastry brush, paint the top of the tart with the currant glaze. Allow time for the glaze to set and the tart to cool before serving (10 minutes).

The shell

Preheat the oven to 400°.

7 tablespoons frozen butter* I cup frozen flour

- 3 tablespoons ice-cold water* I teaspoon cider vinegar
- A pinch of kosher salt
- * It is important to have these ingredients

as cold as possible.

In a food processor fitted with a steel blade, combine all the ingredients until they form a solid mass that rises above the blade. You can add extra water by the tablespoon if the mass does not congeal within the first minute. Tiny pieces of butter should still be visible in the does not congea within the instrument. In precess of butter should still be visible in the dough when it's done. Remove the dough from the bowl and work it quickly it into a ball on a lightly floured surface. Cover with plastic wrap and refrigerate for at least half an hour.

After the dough has rested in the refrigerator, roll it out on a lightly floured surface until it forms a circle approximately 13" in diameter. Center the circle of dough in a 10-inch tart pan with a removeable bottom. Use your knuckles to make sure that the dough tucks neatly against the edge of the pan and run the rolling pin around the rim to remove the excess. Cover and refrigerate again for at least half an hour.

Line the tart shell with aluminum foil, being careful to cover the edges. Pierce the aluminum and the dough several times with a fork and fill the shell with dried lentils. Bake for 20 minutes. Remove the aluminum and the lentils and continue baking until the shell is golden brown, about 15 minutes more.

The apples

Peel, core and halve the apples. Either by hand or with a food processor, cut the apple halves crosswise into thin (less than 1/4") slices. In a large bowl, toss the appples in the lemon juice, cinammon and nutmeg. Cover and set aside.

The pastry cream

Sift the sugar, flour and cornstarch together in a mixing bowl. Add the egg and beat until light. In a heavy-bottomed saucepan, bring the milk to a boil. Stir half the milk into the egg mixture, then pour the whole mixture back into the saucepan. Cook over high heat, stirring constantly, until the center bubbles and the mixture is very thick. Remove from heat and stir in the vanilla and the butter. Pour the pastry cream into a bowl, cover tightly with plastic wrap and refrigerate. (Be sure to press the plastic wrap right onto the cream to prevent a skin from forming.)

The assembly and baking

Preheat the oven to 375°.

Spread the pastry cream over the bottom of the shell. Arrange the apple slices in a circle around the outer edge of the shell, making sure the slices overlap. When the outer circle is completed, make a smaller circle, overlapping about half of the outer circle. If there's room, make a third circle. fill the hole in the center with pieces of a few slices-let them stand upright. Cover the tart with a circle of wax paper and bake for 25 minutes. Remove the wax paper and sprinkle the sugar over the apples. Bake uncovered for 5-10 minutes more, until the

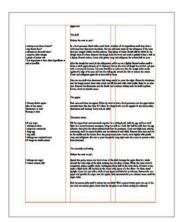
Boil the currant jelly until it reduces by one-third. With a pastry brush, paint the top of the tart with the currant glaze. Allow time for the glaze to set before serving (10 minutes).

6 Granny Smith apples Juice of one lemon Cinammon to taste Nutmeg to taste

1/4 cup sugar 1 tablespoon flour 2 teaspoons cornstarch I large egg

3 tablespoons unsalted butter 1/4 teaspoon vanilla extract

2 tablespoons sugar 8 ounces currant jelly



Establishing a format

After analyzing and organizing the content, devise a format that expresses differences within the text. In Option 1 (opposite), all the ingredients are separated from the directions. Because the line length required for easy reading of directions is more or less twice the line length required for a list of ingredients, the area within the margins of the sheet is divided vertically into three intervals, or columns. Ingredients occupy the first column, directions the second and third columns. Groups of ingredients cross-align with the directions that refer to them.

against the edge of the pan an Cover and refrigerate again fo



Line the tart shell with alumin and the dough several times we utes. Remove the aluminum a brown, about 15 minutes more



The apples

Peel, core and halve the apple crosswise into thin (less than singermon and putmer. Cover

Establishing a hierarchy

Single line spaces indicate breaks between paragraphs. Double line spaces indicate breaks between sections of text. 1/4 cup sugar

- 1 tablespoon flour
- 2 teaspoons cornstarch
- 1 large egg
- 1 cup milk
- 3 tablespoons unsalted butter
- 1/4 teaspoon vanilla extract

Typeface choice

When numbers and fractions occur frequently in the text, choose a type-face with an expert set that includes lowercase numerals and fraction characters. (See page 6 for a brief discussion of lowercase numerals.)

essor fitted with a rises above the bleal within the first 's done. Remove the district of surface. Cover we have the surface of the surface.

Ligatures

Virtually all text typefaces have ligatures for f/i and f/l combinations. Some also have ligatures for f/f, f/f/i, and f/f/l.

The shell

Preheat the oven to 400°.

7 tablespoons frozen butter*
I cup frozen flour*
3 tablespoons ice-cold water*
I teaspoon cider vinegar
A pinch of kosher salt
* It is important to have these ingredients as
cold as possible.

In a food processor fitted with a steel blade, combine all the ingredients until they form a solid mass that rises above the blade. You can add extra water by the tablespoon if the mass does not congeal within the first minute. Tiny pieces of butter should still be visible in the dough when it's done. Remove the dough from the bowl and work it quickly it into a ball on a lightly floured surface. Cover with plastic wrap and refrigerate for at least half an hour.

After the dough has rested in the refigerator, roll it out on a lightly floured surface until it forms a circle approximately 13" in diameter. Center the circle of dough in a 10-inch tart pan with a removeable bottom. Use your knuckles to make sure that the dough tucks neatly against the edge of the pan and run the rolling pin around the rim to remove the excess. Cover and refrigerate again for at least half an hour.

Line the tart shell with aluminum foil, being careful to cover the edges. Pierce the aluminum and the dough several times with a fork and fill the shell with dried lentils. Bake for 20 minutes. Remove the aluminum and the lentils and continue baking until the shell is golden brown, about 15 minutes more.

The apples

6 Granny Smith apples Juice of one lemon Cinammon to taste Nutmeg to taste

Peel, core and halve the apples. Either by hand or with a food processor, cut the apple halves crosswise into thin (less than ¼") slices. In a large bowl, toss the appples in the lemon juice, cinammon and nutmeg. Cover and set aside.

The pastry cream

¼ cup sugar

I tablespoon flour

2 teaspoons cornstarch

I large egg

I cup nill

3 tablespoons unsalted butter

¼ teaspoon vanilla extract

Sift the sugar, flour and cornstarch together in a mixing bowl. Add the egg and beat until light. In a heavy-bottomed saucepan, bring the milk to a boil. Stir half the milk into the egg mixture, then pour the whole mixture back into the saucepan. Cook over high heat, stirring constantly, until the center bubbles and the mixture is very thick. Remove from heat and stir in the vanilla and the butter. Pour the pastry cream into a bowl, cover tightly with plastic wrap and refrigerate. (Be sure to press the plastic wrap right onto the cream to prevent a skin from forming.)

The assembly and baking

2 tablespoons sugar
8 ounces currant jelly

Preheat the oven to 375°.

Spread the pastry cream over the bottom of the shell. Arrange the apple slices in a circle around the outer edge of the shell, making sure the slices overlap. When the outer circle is completed, make a smaller circle, overlapping about half of the outer circle. If there's room, make a third circle. Fill the hole in the center with pieces of a few slices—let them stand upright. Cover the tart with a circle of wax paper and bake for 25 minutes. Remove the wax paper and sprinkle the sugar over the apples. Bake uncovered for 5-10 minutes more, until the sugar melts.

Boil the currant jelly until it reduces by one-third. With a pastry brush, paint the top of the tart with the currant glaze. Allow time for the glaze to set before serving (to minutes).

Annie rarr

The shell

Probest the own to 400°.

7 tablespoons frozen butter"
1 cap frozen flour
3 tablespoons ice-cold water"
1 teaspoon cider vinegar
A pinch of kosher salt important to have these ingredients as In a food processor fitted with a send blade, combine all the impredients until they form a midd mass that rises above the blade. You can add extra water by the tablespoon if the mass does not congral within the first minute. Tany pieces of butter should still be visible in the dough when it's done. Remove the dough from the bowl and work it quickly it into a ball a halphyl flound mixtine. Cover with plastic ways and refrigerate for a least half in boux.

After the design has rested in the erdigerator, roll it out on a lightly floured surface usth it forms a circle specialization of instancts. Control sciencide of dought is a to-in-oth start pa with a removeable bottom. Use your kentckles to make sure that the dought tucks neathy against the edge of the pan and run the rolling pin around the rim to remove the excess. Cover and refrigerate again for at least half an hour.

Line the tart shell with aluminum full, being careful to cover the edges. Pierce the aluminus and the dough several times with a fock and fill the shell with dried lentils. Bake for 20 min tutes. Remove the aluminum and the lentils and continue baking until the shell is golden brown, about 15 minutes more.

The apple

Juice of one lemon Cinammon to taste Nutmeg to easte

crosswise into thin (less than 14") slices. In a large bowl, toss the appples in the lemon juice cinamuson and nutmeg. Cover and set aside.

The pastry cream

tablespoon flour
 tempoons constand
 flarge egg
 cop mill
 tablespoons unsalted butter
 forespoons unsalted butter

Sift the super, flour and commarch sugerher in a mining bowt. Add the egg and best until light. In a heavy-bouroned saucepan, bring the milk to a boil. Six half the milk into the egg minimum, then pour the whole minimum back into the succepan. Cook over high heat, adming commandy, until the center babbles and the minimum is very thick. Remove from best and it in the vanilla and the butter. Flour the purty creams into a bowl, cover tightly wish plastic warp and refrigerate. (Be sure to press the plastic wrap right onto the cream to prevent a ski from formloss.)

The assembly and baking

tablespoons sugar Preheat the oven to 37

Syraid the pastry cross over the bottom of the shell. Arrange the apple slices in a cinic around the outer edge of the shell, making sure the slices overlap. When the outer circle is completed, make a smaller circle, overlapping about half of the outer circle. If there's room, make as that circle, 17th the hole in the cortex with pieces of a few allow—let them stand upplich. Cover the star with a circle of was paper and had for any minutes amove, until of supper and aprinted the sugar over the applies. Bake uncovered for 5-to minutes more, until of sugar media.

Boil the current jelly until it reduces by one-third. With a partry brush, paint the top of the

Reinforcing structure

Setting the ingredients flush right against the gutter between the first and second columns strengthens the formal organization of the page. Keep in mind that setting type flush-right causes you to read the shape created by the type before you read the actual text. Similarly, the counterform created by the gutter between the two kinds of text (ingredients and directions) becomes a dominant, possibly intrusive element on the page.

The shell

Preheat the oven to 400°.

7 tablespoons frozen butter*
1 cup frozen flour*
3 tablespoons ice-cold water*
1 teaspoon cider vinegar
A pinch of kosher salt

* It is important to have these ingredients as cold as possible.

In a food processor fitted with a steel blade, combine all the ingredients until they form a solid mass that rises above the blade. You can add extra water by the tablespoon if the mass does not congeal within the first minute. Tiny pieces of butter should still be visible in the dough when it's done. Remove the dough from the bowl and work it quickly it into a ball on a lightly floured surface. Cover with plastic wrap and refrigerate for at least half an hour.

After the dough has rested in the refigerator, roll it out on a lightly floured surface until it forms a circle approximately 13" in diameter. Center the circle of dough in a 10-inch tart pan with a removeable bottom. Use your knuckles to make sure that the dough tucks neatly against the edge of the pan and run the rolling pin around the rim to remove the excess. Cover and refrigerate again for at least half an hour.

Line the tart shell with aluminum foil, being careful to cover the edges. Pierce the aluminum and the dough several times with a fork and fill the shell with dried lentils. Bake for 20 minutes. Remove the aluminum and the lentils and continue baking until the shell is golden brown, about 15 minutes more.

The apples

Peel, core and halve the apples. Either by hand or with a food processor, cut the apple halves crosswise into thin (less than ¹/₄") slices. In a large bowl, toss the appples in the lemon juice, cinammon and nutmeg. Cover and set aside.

The pastry cream

Sift the sugar, flour and cornstarch together in a mixing bowl. Add the egg and beat until light. In a heavy-bottomed saucepan, bring the milk to a boil. Stir half the milk into the egg mixture, then pour the whole mixture back into the saucepan. Cook over high heat, stirring constantly, until the center bubbles and the mixture is very thick. Remove from heat and stir in the vanilla and the butter. Pour the pastry cream into a bowl, cover tightly with plastic wrap and refrigerate. (Be sure to press the plastic wrap right onto the cream to prevent a skin from forming.)

The assembly and baking

Preheat the oven to 375°.

Spread the pastry cream over the bottom of the shell. Arrange the apple slices in a circle around the outer edge of the shell, making sure the slices overlap. When the outer circle is completed, make a smaller circle, overlapping about half of the outer circle. If there's room, make a third circle. Fill the hole in the center with pieces of a few slices—let them stand upright. Cover the tart with a circle of wax paper and bake for 25 minutes. Remove the wax paper and sprinkle the sugar over the apples. Bake uncovered for 5-10 minutes more, until the sugar melts.

Boil the currant jelly until it reduces by one-third. With a pastry brush, paint the top of the tart with the currant glaze. Allow time for the glaze to set before serving (to minutes).

6 Granny Smith apples Juice of one lemon Cinammon to taste Nutmer to taste

Nutmeg to taste

1/4 cup sugar 1 tablespoon flour 2 teaspoons cornstarch

1 large egg

3 tablespoons unsalted butter

2 tablespoons sugar 8 ounces currant jelly

The shell

Preheat the oven to 400°.

In a food processor fitted with a solid mass that rises above the b does not congeal within the firs dough when it's done. Remove

Title treatment

Enlarging the size of the title not only reinforces hierarchy, but also provides an unambiguous starting point for reading. Line the tart shell with aluminu and the dough several times winutes. Remove the aluminum an brown, about 15 minutes more.

The apples

Peel, core and halve the apples. crosswise into thin (less than 1/4 cinammon and nutmeg. Cover

Secondary heads

Using italic for secondary heads reinforces their place in the overall hierarchy already indicated by the additional line space.

7 tablespoons frozen butter*
1 cup frozen flour*
3 tablespoons ice-cold water*
1 teaspoon cider vinegar
A pinch of kosher salt

* It is important to have these ingreas cold as possible.

Italic within the text

Italic within the list of ingredients indicates information that affects the items in use. Note also how the exdented asterisk (see page 130) strengthens the left margin of the type. Compare with Option 1.

The shell

7 tablespoons frozen butter* I cup frozen flour* 3 tablespoons ice-cold water* I teaspoon cider vinegar A pinch of kosher salt

* It is important to have these

ingredients as cold as possible.

6 Granny Smith apples Juice of one lemon Cinammon to taste Nutmeg to taste

1/4 cup sugar 1 tablespoon flour

2 teaspoons cornstarch I large egg I cup milk 3 tablespoons unsalted butter 1/4 teaspoon vanilla extract

2 tablespoons sugar 8 ounces currant jelly In a food processor fitted with a steel blade, combine all the ingredients until they form a solid mass that rises above the blade. You can add extra water by the table spoon if the mass does not congeal within the first minute. Tiny pieces of butter should still be visible in the dough when it's done. Remove the dough from the bowl and work it quickly it into a ball on a lightly floured surface. Cover with plastic wrap and refrigerate for at least half an hour.

After the dough has rested in the refigerator, roll it out on a lightly floured surface until it forms a circle approximately 13" in diameter. Center the circle of dough in a 10-inch tart pan with a removeable bottom. Use your knuckles to make sure that the dough tucks neatly against the edge of the pan and run the rolling pin around the rim to remove the excess. Cover and refrigerate again for at least half

Line the tart shell with aluminum foil, being careful to cover the edges. Pierce the aluminum and the dough several times with a fork and fill the shell with dried lentils. Bake for 20 minutes. Remove the aluminum and the lentils and continue baking until the shell is golden brown, about 15 minutes more.

The apples

Peel, core and halve the apples. Either by hand or with a food processor, cut the apple halves crosswise into thin (less than 1/4") slices. In a large bowl, toss the appples in the lemon juice, cinammon and nutmeg. Cover and set aside.

The pastry cream

Sift the sugar, flour and cornstarch together in a mixing bowl. Add the egg and beat until light. In a heavy-bottomed saucepan, bring the milk to a boil. Stir half the milk into the egg mixture, then pour the whole mixture back into the saucepan. Cook over high heat, stirring constantly, until the center bubbles and the mixture is very thick. Remove from heat and stir in the vanilla and the butter. Pour the pastry cream into a bowl, cover tightly with plastic wrap and refrigerate. (Be sure to press the plastic wrap right onto the cream to prevent a skin from forming.)

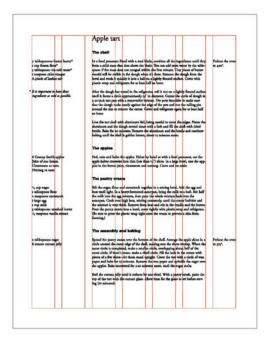
The assembly and baking

Spread the pastry cream over the bottom of the shell. Arrange the apple slices in a circle around the outer edge of the shell, making sure the slices overlap. When the outer circle is completed, make a smaller circle, overlapping about half of the outer circle. If there's room, make a third circle. Fill the hole in the center with pieces of a few slices-let them stand upright. Cover the tart with a circle of wax paper and bake for 25 minutes. Remove the wax paper and sprinkle the sugar over the apples. Bake uncovered for 5-10 minutes more, until the sugar melts.

Boil the currant jelly until it reduces by one-third. With a pastry brush, paint the top of the tart with the currant glaze. Allow time for the glaze to set before serving (10 minutes).

Preheat the oven to 400°.

Preheat the oven to 375°.



Revised format

Dividing the type area into seven columns provides a new, separate column for oven settings, creates a narrower (and easier to read) line length for instructions, and increases white space on the page.

Tabular matter

156

Designers often encounter typographic problems that are not based on narrative or instructions ('This happened, then this happened,' or 'Do this, then do this'). Timetables, financial statements, lists of dates, weather charts—many kinds of information design—often need to accommodate reading in two directions simultaneously. Setting up columns and rows that read clearly requires a thorough understanding of working with tabs.

The timetable to the right (actual size: 6 in or 152 mm square) demonstrates many of the problems with overdesigning tabular matter. Extraneous rules, both vertical and horizontal, have been imposed on the basic typographic organization to correct for unfortunate first choices about type size, leading, and placement.

CAT	TIDD	AVC	AND	SHIND	AVE

INBOUND	1204	1208	1212	1216	1220	1224
READ DOWN	A.M.	A.M.	P.M.	P.M.	P.M.	P.M.
Dep: Haverhill	7 15	10 15	1 15	4 15	7 15	10 15
Bradford	7 17	10 17	1 17	4 17	7 17	10 17
Lawrence	7 26	10 26	1 26	4 26	7 26	10 26
Andover	7 31	10 31	1 31	4 31	7 31	10 31
Ballardvale	f7 36	f10 36	fl 36	f4 36	f7 36	f10 36
North Wilmington	f7 42	f10 42	fl 42	f4 42	f7 42	f10 42
Reading	7 51	10 51	1 51	4 51	7 51	10 51
Wakefield	7 57	10 57	1 57	4 57	7 57	10 57
Greenwood	f8 00	f11 00	f2 00	f5 00	f8 00	fl1 00
Melrose Highlands	8 02	11 02	2 02	5 02	8 02	11 02
Melrose/Cedar Park	f8 04	fil 04	£2 04	£5 04	f8 04	f11 04
Wyoming Hill	f8 06	f11 06	f2 06	f5 06	f8 06	fl1 06
Malden Center	8 09	11 09	2 09	5 09	8 09	11 09
Arr: North Station	8 19	11 19	2 19	5 19	8 19	11 19
OUTBOUND	1205	1209	1213	1217	1221	1225
READ DOWN	A.M.	A.M.	P.M.	P.M.	P.M.	P.M.
Dep: North Station	8 45	11 45	2 45	5 45	8 45	11 30
Malden Center	8 55	11 55	2 55	5 55	8 55	11 40
Wyoming Hill	f8 58	fl1 58	£2.58	f5 58	f8 58	fl1 43
Melrose/Cedar Park	f9 00	f12 00	f3 00	f6 00	f9 00	f11 45
Melrose Highlands	9 02	12 02	3 02	6 02	9 02	11 47
Greenwood	f9 04	f12 04	£3 04	f6 04	f9 04	fl1 49
Wakefield	9 08	12 08	3 08	6 08	9 08	11 53
Reading	9 14	12 14	3 14	6 14	9 14	11 59
North Wilmington	f9 22	f12 22	f3 22	f6 22	f9 22	f12 07
Ballardvale	f9 28	f12 28	f3 28	f6 28	f9 28	f12 13
Andover	9 33	12 33	3 33	6 33	9 33	12 18
Lawrence	9 38	12 38	3 38	6 38	9 38	12 23
Bradford	9 47	12 47	3 47	6 47	9 47	12 32
	341	12 4/	341	04/	241	14 34

July 4 and New Year's Eve contact Customer Service for service updates at 617-222-3200 HOLIDAYS
SATURDAY SERVICE
Presidents' Day
Independence Day
New Year's Day
f stops only on request

SUNDAY SERVICE Memorial Day • Labor Day Thanksgiving Day • Christmas Day

Inbound	1204	1208	1212	1216	1220	1224
Dep: Haverhill	7:15	10:15	1:15	4:15	7:15	10:15
Bradford	7:17	10:17	1:17	4:17	7:17	10:17
Lawrence	7:26	10:26	1:26	4:26	7:26	10:26
Andover	7:31	10:31	1:31	4:31	7:31	10:31
Ballardvale	7:36*	10:36*	1:36*	4:36*	7:36*	10:36*
North Wilmington	7:42*	10:42*	1:42*	4:42*	7:42*	10:42*
Reading	7:51	10:51	1:51	4:51	7:51	10:51
Wakefield	7:57	10:57	1:57	4:57	7:57	10:57
Greenwood	8:00*	11:00*	2:00*	5:00*	8:00*	11:00*
Melrose Highlands	8:02	11:02	2:02	5:02	8:02	11:02
Melrose/Cedar Park	8:04*	11:04*	2:04*	5:04*	8:04*	11:04*
Wyoming Hill	8:06*	11:06*	2:06*	5:06*	8:06*	11:06*
Malden Center	8:09	11:09	2:09	5:09	8:09	11:09
Arr: North Station	8:19	11:19	2:19	5:19	8:19	11:19
Outbound	1205	1209	1213	1217	1221	1225
Dep: North Station	8:45	11:45	2:45	5:45	8:45	11:30
Malden Center	8:55	11:55	2:55	5:55	8:55	11:40
Wyoming Hill	8:58*	11:58*	2:58*	5:58*	8:58*	11:43*
Melrose/Cedar Park	9:00*	12:00*	3:00*	6:00*	9:00*	11:45*
Melrose Highlands	9:02	12:02	3:02	6:02	9:02	11:47
Greenwood	9:04*	12:04*	3:04*	6:04*	9:04*	11:49*
Wakefield	9:08	12:08	3:08	6:08	9:08	11:53
Reading	9:14	12:14	3:14	6:14	9:14	11:59
North Wilmington	9:22*	12:22*	3:22*	6:22*	9:22*	12:07* 12:13* 12:18 12:23 12:32 12:34
Ballardvale	9:28*	12:28*	3:28*	6:28*	9:28*	
Andover	9:33	12:33	3:33	6:33	9:33	
Lawrence	9:38	12:38	3:38	6:38	9:38	
Bradford	9:47	12:47	3:47	6:47	9:47	
Arr: Haverhill	9:49	12:49	3:49	6:49	9:49	
Holidays						
Weekend service		nts' Day • In al Day • Lab				
July 4 and New Year's Eve	contact	Customer Se	ervice for se	rvice update	es at 617-22	22-3200

As with the previous exercise, the first step is to set all the material in one size of one typeface in order to uncover the internal logic of the information.

Here a sans serif typeface (Univers 45) is chosen because the relatively large x-height and open counters aid reading at smaller sizes. The horizontal rules used on the original schedule have been replaced by line spaces. Vertical rules and the 'frame' of the original have been eliminated altogether. Centered type has been reformatted to flush left/ragged right. The term 'READ DOWN' has

been eliminated and the 'f' before some entries in the schedule has been replaced with an asterisk after.

From this point, the goal is to reinforce the two directions of reading (across and down) without introducing elements that supersede the information itself.

nbound	1204	1208	1212	1216	1220	1224
Dep: Haverhill	7:15	10:15	1:15	4:15	7:15	10:15
radford	7:17	10:17	1:17	4:17	7:17	10:17
awrence	7:26	10:26	1:26	4:26	7:26	10:26
ndover	7:31	10:31	1:31	4:31	7:31	10:31
allardvale	7:36*	10:36*	1:36*	4:36*	7:36*	10:36*
lorth Wilmington	7:42*	10:42*	1:42*	4:42*	7:42*	10:42*
eading	7:51	10:51	1:51	4:51	7:51	10:51
/akefield	7:57	10:57	1:57	4:57	7:57	10:57
reenwood	8:00*	11:00*	2:00*	5:00*	8:00*	11:00*
lelrose Highlands	8:02	11:02	2:02	5:02	8:02	11:02
lelrose/Cedar Park	8:04*	11:04*	2:04*	5:04*	8:04*	11:04*
yoming Hill	8:06*	11:06*	2:06*	5:06*	8:06*	11:06*
lalden Center	8:09	11:09	2:09	5:09	8:09	11:09
arr: North Station	8:19	11:19	2:19	5:19	8:19	11:19
utbound	1205	1209	1213	1217	1221	1225
ep: North Station	8:45	11:45	2:45	5:45	8:45	11:30
alden Center	8:55	11:55	2:55	5:55	8:55	11:40
voming Hill	8:58*	11:58*	2:58*	5:58*	8:58*	11:43*
lelrose/Cedar Park	9:00*	12:00*	3:00*	6:00*	9:00*	11:45*
lelrose Highlands	9:02	12:02	3:02	6:02	9:02	11:47
reenwood	9:04*	12:04*	3:04*	6:04*	9:04*	11:49*
/akefield	9:08	12:08	3:08	6:08	9:08	11:53
eading	9:14	12:14	3:14	6:14	9:14	11:59
orth Wilmington	9:22*	12:22*	3:22*	6:22*	9:22*	12:07*
allardvale	9:28*	12:28*	3:28*	6:28*	9:28*	12:13*
ndover	9:33	12:33	3:33	6:33	9:33	12:18
awrence	9:38	12:38	3:38	6:38	9:38	12:23
radford	9:47	12:47	3:47	6:47	9:47	12:32
		12:49	3:49	6:49	9:49	12:34

Weekend service

July 4 and New Year's Eve

Presidents' Day • Independence Day • New Year's Day • Memorial Day • Labor Day • Thanksgiving Day • Christmas Day contact Customer Service for service updates at 617-222-3200

* stops only on request

Two weights of boldface (Univers 65 and 75) are added, both to indicate hierarchy (days of the week, trains' numbers and directions, ends of the line) and to distinguish morning and afternoon/evening times at a quick glance.

This latter use of boldface is more an issue with 12-hour American time systems than with 24-hour European systems. Still, the distinction between before and after noon can be useful for quick orientation.

Inbound	1204	1208	1212	1216	1220	1224
Dep: Haverhill Bradford Lawrence Andover Ballardvale North Wilmington	7:15	10:15	1:15	4:15	7:15	10:15
	7:17	10:17	1:17	4:17	7:17	10:17
	7:26	10:26	1:26	4:26	7:26	10:26
	7:31	10:31	1:31	4:31	7:31	10:31
	7:36*	10:36*	1:36*	4:36*	7:36*	10:36*
	7:42*	10:42*	1:42*	4:42*	7:42*	10:42*
Reading	7:51	10:51	1:51	4:51	7:51	10:51
Wakefield	7:57	10:57	1:57	4:57	7:57	10:57
Greenwood	8:00*	11:00*	2:00*	5:00*	8:00*	11:00*
Melrose Highlands	8:02	11:02	2:02	5:02	8:02	11:02
Melrose/Cedar Park	8:04*	11:04*	2:04*	5:04*	8:04*	11:04*
Wyoming Hill	8:06*	11:06*	2:06*	5:06*	8:06*	11:06*
Malden Center	8:09	11:09	2:09	5:09	8:09	11:09
Arr: North Station	8:19	11:19	2:19	5:19	8:19	11:19
Outbound	1205	1209	1213	1217	1221	1225
Dep: North Station	8:45	11:45	2:45	5:45	8:45	11:30
Malden Center	8:55	11:55	2:55	5:55	8:55	11:40
Wyoming Hill	8:58*	11:58*	2:58*	5:58*	8:58*	11:43*
Melrose/Cedar Park	9:00*	12:00*	3:00*	6:00*	9:00*	11:45*
Melrose Highlands	9:02	12:02	3:02	6:02	9:02	11:47
Greenwood	9:04*	12:04*	3:04*	6:04*	9:04*	11:49*
Wakefield	9:08	12:08	3:08	6:08	9:08	11:53
Reading	9:14	12:14	3:14	6:14	9:14	11:59
North Wilmington	9:22*	12:22*	3:22*	6:22*	9:22*	12:07* 12:13* 12:18 12:23 12:32 12:34
Ballardvale	9:28*	12:28*	3:28*	6:28*	9:28*	
Andover	9:33	12:33	3:33	6:33	9:33	
Lawrence	9:38	12:38	3:38	6:38	9:38	
Bradford	9:47	12:47	3:47	6:47	9:47	
Arr: Haverhill	9:49	12:49	3:49	6:49	9:49	
HOLIDAYS						
Weekend service		nts' Day • In	dependence or Day • Th			

* stops only on request

Hierarchy is reinforced by introducing rules to signify major breaks in information. Major heads are reversed out of wide black rules, secondary heads follow hairlines.

Inbound	1204	1208	1212	1216	1220	1224
Dep: Haverhill	7:15	10:15	1:15	4:15	7:15	10:15
Bradford	7:17	10:17	1:17	4:17	7:17	10:17
Lawrence	7:26	10:26	1:26	4:26	7:26	10:26
Andover	7:31	10:31	1:31	4:31	7:31	10:31
Ballardvale	7:36*	10:36*	1:36*	4:36*	7:36*	10:36*
North Wilmington	7:42*	10:42*	1:42*	4:42*	7:42*	10:42*
Reading	7:51	10:51	1:51	4:51	7:51	10:51
Wakefield	7:57	10:57	1:57	4:57	7:57	10:57
Greenwood	8:00*	11:00*	2:00*	5:00*	8:00*	11:00*
Melrose Highlands	8:02	11:02	2:02	5:02	8:02	11:02
Melrose/Cedar Park	8:04*	11:04*	2:04*	5:04*	8:04*	11:04*
Wyoming Hill	8:06*	11:06*	2:06*	5:06*	8:06*	11:06*
Malden Center	8:09	11:09	2:09	5:09	8:09	11:09
Arr: North Station	8:19	11:19	2:19	5:19	8:19	11:19
Outbound	1205	1209	1213	1217	1221	1225
Dep: North Station	8:45	11:45	2:45	5:45	8:45	11:30
Malden Center	8:55	11:55	2:55	5:55	8:55	11:40
Wyoming Hill	8:58*	11:58*	2:58*	5:58*	8:58*	11:43*
Melrose/Cedar Park	9:00*	12:00*	3:00*	6:00*	9:00*	11:45*
Melrose Highlands	9:02	12:02	3:02	6:02	9:02	11:47
Greenwood	9:04*	12:04*	3:04*	6:04*	9:04*	11:49*
Wakefield	9:08	12:08	3:08	6:08	9:08	11:53
Reading	9:14	12:14	3:14	6:14	9:14	11:59
North Wilmington	9:22*	12:22*	3:22*	6:22*	9:22*	12:07*
Ballardvale	9:28*	12:28*	3:28*	6:28*	9:28*	12:13*
Andover	9:33	12:33	3:33	6:33	9:33	12:18
Lawrence	9:38	12:38	3:38	6:38	9:38	12:23
Bradford	9:47	12:47	3:47	6:47	9:47	12:32
Arr: Haverhill	9:49	12:49	3:49	6:49	9:49	12:34

HOLIDATS					
Weekend service	Presidents' Day • Independence Day • New Year's Day • Memorial Day • Labor Day • Thanksgiving Day • Christmas Day				
July 4 and New Year's Eve	contact Customer Service for service updates at 617-222-3200				

^{*} stops only on request

The space between columns of times already supports vertical reading. Screened wide horizontal rules, added between alternating lines of arrival/departure times, aids readability across the timetable.

Inbound	1204	1208	1212	1216	1220	1224			
Dep: Haverhill	7:15	10:15	1:15	4:15	7:15	10:15			
Bradford	7:17	10:17	1:17	4:17	7:17	10:17			
Lawrence	7:26	10:26	1:26	4:26	7:26	10:26			
Andover	7:31	10:31	1:31	4:31	7:31	10:31			
Ballardvale	7:36*	10:36*	1:36*	4:36*	7:36*	10:36*			
North Wilmington	7:42*	10:42*	1:42*	4:42*	7:42*	10:42*			
Reading	7:51	10:51	1:51	4:51	7:51	10:51			
Wakefield	7:57	10:57	1:57	4:57	7:57	10:57			
Greenwood	8:00*	11:00*	2:00*	5:00*	8:00*	11:00*			
Melrose Highlands	8:02	11:02	2:02	5:02	8:02	11:02			
Melrose/Cedar Park	8:04*	11:04*	2:04*	5:04*	8:04*	11:04*			
Wyoming Hill	8:06*	11:06*	2:06*	5:06*	8:06*	11:06*			
Malden Center	8:09	11:09	2:09	5:09	8:09	11:09			
Arr: North Station	8:19	11:19	2:19	5:19	8:19	11:19			
Outbound	1205	1209	1213	1217	1221	1225			
Dep: North Station	8:45	11:45	2:45	5:45	8:45	11:30			
Malden Center	8:55	11:55	2:55	5:55	8:55	11:40			
Wyoming Hill	8:58*	11:58*	2:58*	5:58*	8:58*	11:43*			
Melrose/Cedar Park	9:00*	12:00*	3:00*	6:00*	9:00*	11:45*			
Melrose Highlands	9:02	12:02	3:02	6:02	9:02	11:47			
Greenwood	9:04*	12:04*	3:04*	6:04*	9:04*	11:49*			
Wakefield	9:08	12:08	3:08	6:08	9:08	11:53			
Reading	9:14	12:14	3:14	6:14	9:14	11:59			
North Wilmington	9:22*	12:22*	3:22*	6:22*	9:22*	12:07*			
Ballardvale	9:28*	12:28*	3:28*	6:28*	9:28*	12:13*			
Andover	9:33	12:33	3:33	6:33	9:33	12:18			
Lawrence	9:38	12:38	3:38	6:38	9:38	12:23			
Bradford	9:47	12:47	3:47	6:47	9:47	12:32			
Arr: Haverhill	9:49	12:49	3:49	6:49	9:49	12:34			
HOLIDAYS									
Weekend service	Presider Memori	Presidents' Day • Independence Day • New Year's Day • Memorial Day • Labor Day • Thanksgiving Day • Christmas Day							

A second color reinforces existing organization both by highlighting primary and secondary information and by calling attention to exceptions to the regular schedule. The hairline rule signifying outbound trains (rendered redundant by the use of color) is removed.

Type as image and information

Before digital type, every typesetter provided-and every designer owned-specimen books, which displayed not only the typefaces the typesetter owned but also the sizes in which they were available. Beyond their use as a handy reference, specimen books more importantly gave the designer the opportunity to visualize clearly how his or her material would look when set in a specific typeface at a specific size. To this day, many designers collect specimen books, often works of art in their own right, for the sheer pleasure of admiring type on paper.

Digital type has effectively made every designer his or her own type-setter. In obviating the typesetting profession, it has also eliminated the source of specimen books. These days, if we want to see what a font looks like, we google it. Unfortunately, the digital representation of type is, even at its best, an approximation. Nothing supplants seeing the actual type, at actual size, on paper held in the hand.

To redress this loss, some designers produce their own specimen books, for their own use, as a visual aid in their daily work. Specimen books offer an interesting design challenge because they present type both as image and information; the designer has to show 7 pt. italic even as he or she identifies what is being shown. Providing text-size type in actual text settings, ideally with more than one kind of leading, is more useful than merely presenting a character set. At larger scale, because designers often choose display type for the shape of a particular character, showing display-size type as actual headlines may not be as useful as allowing the reader to see a full character set.

¿ñçß?



This page and opposite:
Janson text roman and italic at various sizes. A specimen book presents this material in a coherent fashion so that designers can familiarize themselves with a typeface's salient characteristics.

11 22 33 44 55 66 77 88 99 00



fi fl 1/4 1/2 3/4 fi fl 1/4 1/2 3/4

This bookish inclination at length determined my father to make me a printer, though he had already one son (James) of that profession. In 1717 my brother James returned from England with a press and letters to set up his business in Boston. I liked it much better than that of my father, but still had a hankering for the sea. To prevent the apprehended effect of such an inclination, my father was impatient to have me bound to my brother. I stood out some time, but at last was persuaded, and signed the indentures when I was yet but twelve years old.

—The Autobiography of Benjamin Franklin E)ð
b

AaAa

163

Below:

Reduced specimen sheets for Janson on 8.5 x 11 in (216 x 279 mm) pages. The three-column layout provides a suitable line length for text samples. Centered type references the traditional

nature of the typeface. Text settings are shown in 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, and 12 pt., each with 0, 1, and 2 pts. of leading. Display type is shown in 18, 24, 36, 48, and 60 pt.

Janson 12 point

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890 ?!()&.,;;""''

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890

abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890 ?!()&.,;;""''

12/12

This bookish inclination at length determined my father to make me a printer, though he had already one son (James) of that profession. In 1717 my brother James returned from England with a press and let-ters to set up his business in Boston. I liked it much better than that of my father, but still had a hankering for the sea. To prevent the apprehended effect of such an inclination, my father was impatient to have me bound to my brother. I stood out some time, but at last was persuaded, and signed the indentures when I was yet but twelve years old. The Autobiography of Benjamin Franklin

12/13

This bookish inclination at length determined my father to make me a printer, though he had already one son (James) of that profession. In 1717 my brother James returned from England with a press and letters to set up his business in Boston. I liked it much better than that of my father, but still had a hankering for the sea. To prevent the apprehended effect of such an inclination, my father was impatient to have me bound to my brother. I stood out some time, but at last was persuaded, and signed the indentures when I was yet but twelve years old. The Autobiography of Benjamin Franklin

12/14

This bookish inclination at length determined my father to make me a printer, though he had already one son (James) of that profession. In 1717 my brother James returned from England with a press and letters to set up his business in Boston. I liked it much better than that of my father, but still had a hankering for the sea. To prevent the apprehended effect of such an inclination, my father was impatient to have me bound to my brother. I stood out some time, but at last was persuaded, and signed the indentures when I was yet but twelve years old. The Autobiography of Benjamin Franklin

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPORSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890 ?!()&.,:;"""

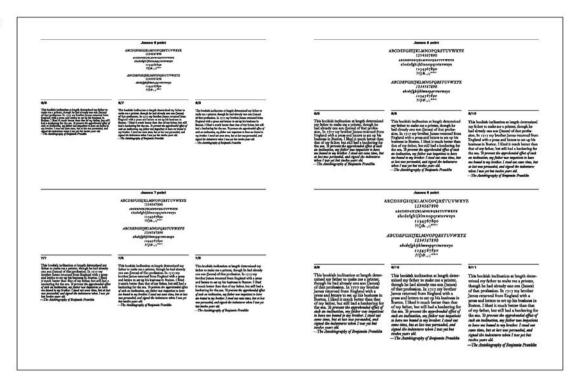
ABCDEFGHI7KLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmnopgrstuvwxyz 1234567890 ?!()&.,; """

Janson 24 point

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890?!()&.,:;"""

ABCDEFGHI7KLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890?!()&.,:;"""



Above and opposite: Sample spreads from the Janson specimen book.

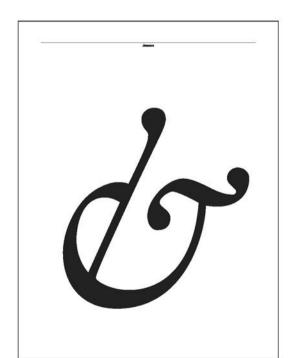
Opposite, below:

The covers in this series of specimen books all feature the italic ampersand: Janson (left), Caslon 540 (upper right), and Didot (lower right).

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ
1234567890
ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ
abcdefghijklmn
opqrstuvwxyz
1234567890?!()&.,:;""'

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN
OPQRSTUVWXYZ
1234567890
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
1234567890?!()&.,:;""'

ABCDEFGHIJ KLMNOPQRS TUVWXYZ 1234567890 ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmn opqrstuvwxyz 1234567890 ?!()&.,:;"""







ABCDEFGHIJ KLMNOPORS TUVWXYZ abcdefghijklm nopgrstuvwxyz 1234567890 !?&()*;:,."""

ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPORSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklm nopgrstuvwxyz 1234567890 !?&()*;:,."""

ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklm nopgrstuvwxyz 1234567890 17&()*;:,. """

ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklm nopgrstuvwxyz 1234567890 17&()*;;,."""

LuptetumLor ad tis alit lut utpate tat lam ven-dit, quat, quisim quipit vullut lore magna feu feuis ad euis dui exero ero dunt nonulli faccun indiliquis eraestrud min volor ad euglam nos alisi eugue euisi euisit ipsum quis num dolese magna feugue euis euu mziruscipit veraesto eum-modolut adigna ad tet inci blandignit, sumsan.

ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPORSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklm nopgrstuvwxyz 1234567890 !7&()*;:,."""

ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijkim nopgretuvwxyz 1234567890

Luptatum ii iniate velenim delis el a augali lum zizilit lor si. Ulput veliqu auguer adlamenore mod minel tinel asaquis aliquipit volortin er adil tut ala alit lutat. Dulase eniacili prat, q eui et vulputat. Cipauscipsum zizit aut ad et augue vendre dunt accum dolorer actur.



Above and opposite:

Reduced specimen sheets on A4 pages. The seven-column format allows for flexibility in the presentation of both display type and text samples.

NACCEPTOLICE
MOPORISTUVINYZ
MOPORIST

The broadsides that follow (actual size A2, 16.5 x 23.4 in, 420 x 594 mm), present typefaces as both physical objects—images, if you will—and as carriers of language—text. Both presentations carry information.

The designer determines the hierarchy of that information by the manipulation of scale, color, and, as always, counterform-where the type isn't. As we already know, large scale reads easily from a distance; small scale rewards close inspection. We also know that black advances off the white page; color, depending upon its value, tends to recede toward the background. Contrast in counterform-tight spaces against large expanses of white-heightens the sense of space from foreground to background. Overlapping disparate elements further reinforce the sense of depth in an otherwise twodimensional space.

The Baskerville types were created by John Baskerville, a typefounder and printer in eighteenth-century England and introduced in Birmingham in 1752. Baskerville's types are classified as transitional, that is, those that are stylistically between oldstyle and modern designs. Because of their high readability, Baskerville's designs have been produced by by all of the major type foundries, and have become a standard typeface for long texts, especially book work, and for display purposes as well. ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890 !@#\$%^&*()_+{}[]=;'"<>,.?/ **ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ** abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890 !@#\$%^&*()_+{}[]=;'"<>,.?/ Baskerville

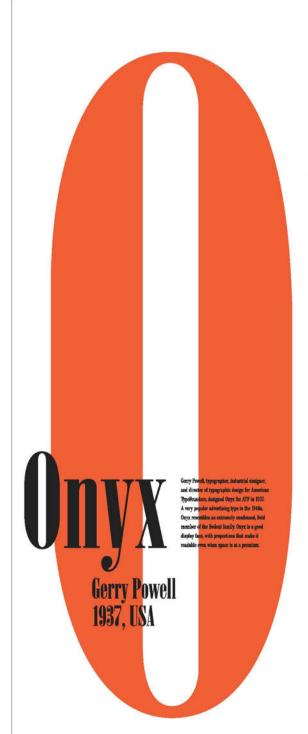
Right above and following pages: Finished broadside with text and character set for reading at arm's length.

Right below:

Building up layers for reading from a distance. Change in value makes some elements appear closer than others.







ABBCDDEFGHIJKLLMN
OEØPÞQRSTUVWXYZ
aæbcdðeffifighitjklimn
oæøpþqrsBtuvwxyz
O123456789\$¢£¥ f
ÁáÀàÄäÅåÂåÃãÇçÉéÈèËëÊê
ÍÍÌÏÏÎÎÑñÓóÒòÖöÔôõõ
ŠšÚúÙùÜüÛûÝýŸÿŽž

.,:;""',,...!?¡¿ _-&*/• «()» [({})]

There is an entwendy narrow constant

The serif is not of the most levelated in the entire fact world



Bauer Bodoni was cut in 1926 by Leuis Höll, under the direction of Hrimrich Jost. This version is the closest to the original, designed by Cismbattista Bodoni in 1790. Cambattista rat the printing house Regia of Parma where he began creating his own systems. Refinements in printing and paper allowed Bodoni to design a typefact with haltime trokes and sectlic. Cambattista was also concerned with harmony between different type sizes, and between text and the page. He realized that space between letters, lines of text and columns could enhance the beauty of his pages. This is vident in the Manuale Typographia published after his death.

Some typefaces that bear the name Bodoni do not resemble the original punches. Bauer Bodoni is characterized by the extreme contrast of thick and this strokes, pure vertical stress, and unbracketed hairline serifs. These features give the reinterpretation of Bodoni the clean, refined annearance that Glambattises intended.

Bauer Bodoni

Louis Höll, Heinrich Jost

ABCDEFGHIJKLM NOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ABCDEFCHIJKLMNO PQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklm nopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890

?!"@#\$¢%&()*{}¡¿
+¾¼½×ø±÷|;°—
<>=[μDþÞŀðß]^_-†‡¶¬-ÆŒæææfifl°°âàåçíñö,,,"\
«‹›»..."(",-./:; ,,
£¼f§™©®

Giambattista Bodoni of Parma, Italy, designed and cut his typefaces at the end of the eighteenth century. The Bodoni types were the culmination of nearly 300 years of evolution in roman type design, in which fine hairlines contrast sharply with holder stems, and serifs are often unbracketed. Bodoni is recognized by its high contrast between thick and thin strokes, pure vertical stress, and hairline serifs. This particular version of Bodoni was first created by Morris Fuller Benton for American Type Founders between 1908 and 1915.

Poster Bodoni

Morris Fuller Benton

1908-15

American Type Founders

ABCDEFGHI JKLMNOPQ RSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijk lmnopqrstu vwxyz

1234567890 !@#\$%^&*()

_+-={}[]|\:;'" <>,./?\~`





"Meta has been halled as 'the typeface of the inneties'; young designers seem to appreciate its rugged charm, which owes a lot to the detail requirements of small type on bad paper. It was never designed to be a trendy typeface, rather it was designed to solve specific problems. Maybe it is that honest, unpretentious background which appeals to graphic designers and typographers around the world."

phers around the world.* Erik Spiekermann

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcedfghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890!@#\$%^&*()_+:;"'?

ABCDEFGHIJKLMN OPQRSTUVWXYZ

abcdefghijklmn opqrstuvwxyz

1234567890

1234567890

~;¢£/¥§¤"«>»fifl†‡·¶•, ""...¿\'^~~~..., "_`—ÆŁ ØŒ°a fæløœß‰¹/₄¹½³/₄ ¹²³×®Þþ¦Đð-±÷¬ Çç°µáèîü

Perpetua

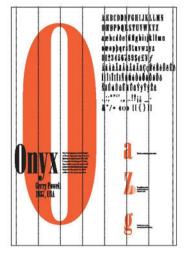
Type designer Eric Gill's most popular Roman typeface is Perpetua, which was released by the Monotype Corporation between 1932 and 1932. It first appeared in a limited edition of the book The Passion of Perpetua and Felicity, for which the typeface was named. The italic form was originally called Felicity. Perpetua's clean chiseled look recalls Gill's stonecutting work and makes it an excellent text typeface, giving sparkle to long passages of text; the Perpetua capitals have beautiful, classical lines that make this one of the finest display alphabets available.

Perpetua comes with Old Style figures for all its variations: Regular, Italics, SMALL CAPS, Bold and Bold Italic.

At this point, it's worthwhile to examine the compositional instincts behind these broadsides. As you can see, in each instance a specific columnar rhythm informs these seemingly free choices. The results, of course, are by no means precise; devising columnar organization for the broadsides was not a stated part of the program. The point is that the instinct to find consistent intervals as a basis for organizing the diverse elements in a composition is as intrinsic to working with type as are the internal rhythms within any given typeface.

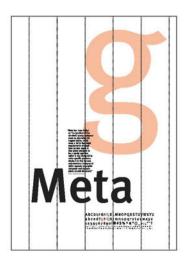
It should be obvious that the same sense of visual rhythm that organizes the compositions from left to right also, in all likelihood, organizes material from top to bottom. In other words, there is probably a grid underlying each broadside, one specific to the material presented. How that grid evolves, and how it is applied, is the subject of the next chapter (see pages 194–199).

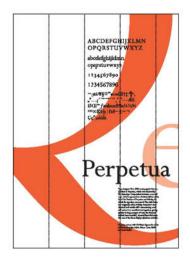












Grid systems

Introduction

178 So far, we've looked at text organization in terms of columnar arrangement. More complex information often requires expression of not only vertical but also horizontal organization. In those situations, a grid is an essential tool.

A grid is a pattern of horizontal and vertical lines that intersect at regular intervals. In typographic design, a grid system is a method for organizing and clarifying text on a page, and amplifying its meaning.

A grid is not about painting a page — creating the perfect composition within the frame of the paper trim. Rather, it is about building a page — providing a framework within which visual and typographic elements work to reinforce meaning.

This sense of building the page comes directly from the days when type itself was physical. Lines of lead type built upon other lines of type—not unlike courses of bricks standing one upon the other—to create the page. And, as with bricks, the stronger the construction, the more durable the results.

It's important to remember that a grid is a system, not an object in itself. For that system to be effective it has to be both organic and responsive. In other words, before you can devise a grid, you have to understand clearly

- · the amount of text/images
- · the kinds of text/images
- the levels of meaning and importance within the text/images
- the relationship between text and images
- the relationship between text/ images and the reader.

Another way to describe the grid system is to see it as a way of providing distinct articulation to the different voices expressed within the text through both color and position on the page. Or you might prefer thinking of a grid as Josef Müller-Brockmann described it: a means of expressing both the architecture (or structure) and the music (or rhythm) inherent in the material. No matter how you look at it, the underlying principle behind any grid is that it is most successful as an expression of content.

Going through the following section, you're going to encounter some terminology and a lot of rules. As with any system, perhaps the most important thing to keep in mind is when it's necessary to break those rules. Beyond the usual employment of contrast within the system, always be on the lookout for opportunities to contrast the order of the system itself with its opposite—the seeming lack of order.

You will learn that the kind of grids that follow are described as establishing starting points on a page, never ending points. A clear expression of that notion is the use of flush left/ragged right text—type that articulates a strong left axis and a strong top axis, but weak edges to the right and below. Therefore, in the examples that follow I have only used flush left, ragged right type. A useful corollary to this notion is to make sure that adjacent columns of text are flush to the top, ragged at the bottom.

An example		
All example		
The basic 24-field grid used to		
design this book allows for three		
horizontal intervals (columns) and		
eight vertical intervals (rows). The		
height of the vertical intervals is		
based on seven lines of text type,		
8 pt. Akzidenz Grotesk, leaded		
to a 10.25 pt. line—		
8/10.25 Akzidenz Grotesk.		
A secondary grid, based on the		
first, breaks each field into four.		
Subsequently, the 24-field grid		
becomes 96 fields—six columns,		
sixteen rows. Rows are now based		
on three lines of type.		
-		

Components of the grid

Many of the components of the grid are the same as those we examined in the text exercises:

> Text page Margins Folios Headers

In addition, there are a few terms that relate specifically to how the grid is constructed:

Fields Gutters (both vertical and horizontal)

For the sake of clarity, we're going to begin by examining all these components in detail.

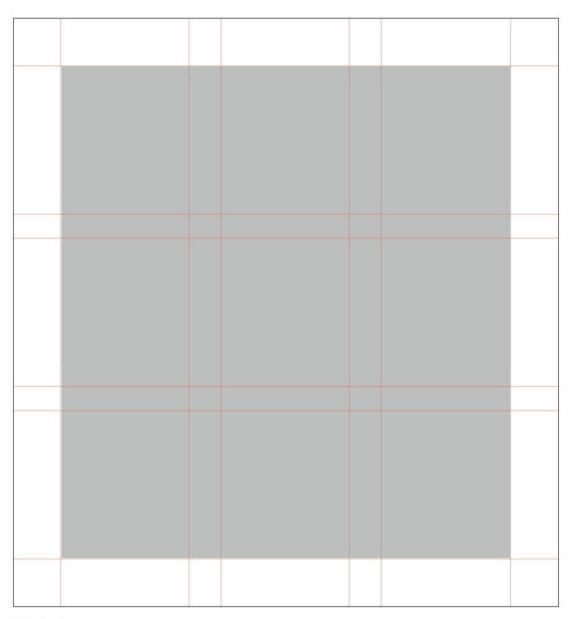
Right and opposite:
Note that a columnar layout
addresses only vertical organization. A grid addresses vertical
and horizontal organization.

A two-column layout

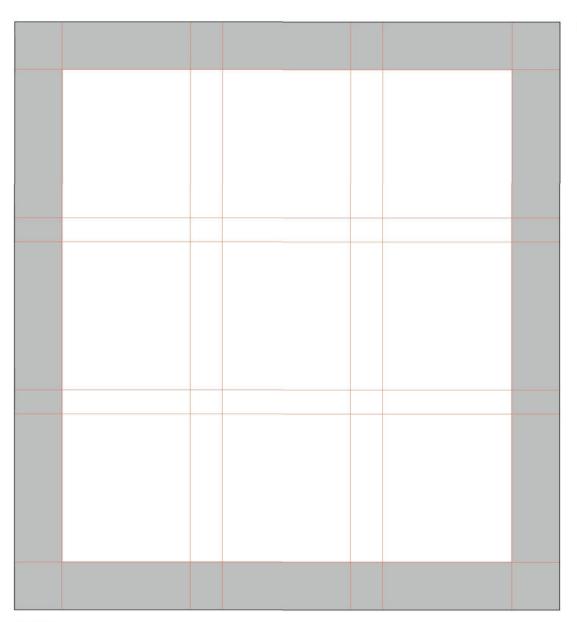
-			

A nine-field grid

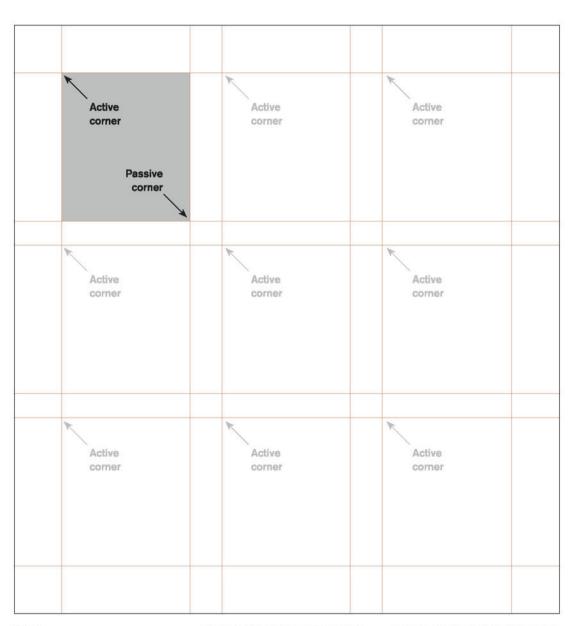




Text page Also known as the type or text area, the area on a page where type appears. The text page contains the fields and gutters that make up the grid.



MarginThe space that distinguishes the text page from the paper around it.

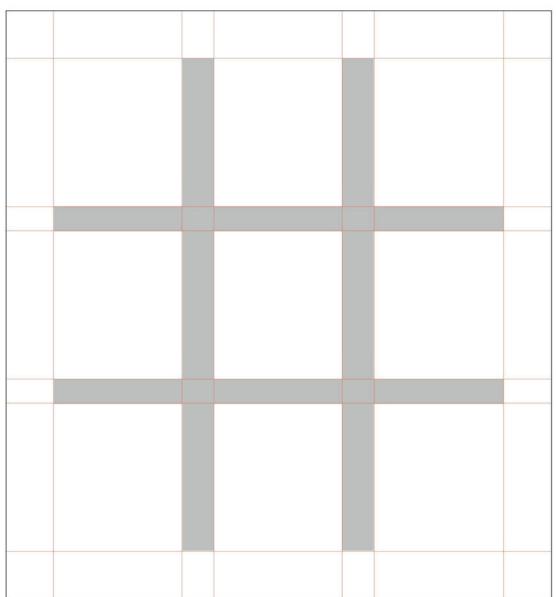


Field

The basic component of any grid. The height of a field is calculated as a multiple of the text leading. Its width is determined by the length of a line of text. (See **Creating a grid for text**, pages 200–211.)

For the kinds of grids we'll be working with, it's useful to remember that the upper left corner of any field is considered the strong or active corner. The lower right corner is considered the weak or passive corner.

In the example above, there are nine active corners—nine starting points for titles, text, images, and captions.



Vertical/horizontal gutter

The gutter separates fields from each other. The height of a horizontal gutter is typically based on the leading of the text type. The width of a vertical gutter should be a distance sufficiently larger than an em (the size of the text type) to prevent reading from one column of text to another. (See Creating a grid for text, pages 200–211.)

My only

thought was leading = horizontal gutter of you.

In a grid system, folios and running matter above or below the text page always appear flush left to the grid (like the text). Thus, they seldom, if ever, appear symmetrical to each other on a spread.

	Running head	Running head	Running head	
Running shoulder				Running shoulder
Running shoulder				Running shoulder
Running shoulder				Running shoulder
	Running foot	Running foot	Running foot	

Running head/running foot/ running shoulder

In longer documents, a guide for readers to show them where they are in the manuscript. These may contain the title of the book, the title of a section of the book, or the author's name. Like folios, they sit outside the text page, but should always relate to it either vertically or horizontally. Running heads appear above the text page, running feet below, running shoulders to the sides.

	123	123	123	
123				123
123				123
123				123
	123	123	123	

Folio

The page number. This typically sits outside the text page, but, like running matter, it should always relate to the grid either vertically or horizontally.

A simple grid

Grids are particularly useful for creating a sense of simultaneity on the page, as this simple exercise demonstrates. We have here a title page for a catalog. Page size is 9 in (229 mm) square. Copy consists of a title, a subtitle, and a publisher—three levels of information, each in three languages (English, German, and French).

First, the type is set in three weights of a typeface (here, Akzidenz Grotesk Regular, Medium, and Bold), in three sizes based on a Fibonacci sequence (13, 21, and 34 pt., each with 2 pts. of leading). Certainly, it is possible to articulate the hierarchy of information by changing just the size or the weight. As you know by now, these are the decisions that make each designer's work personal.

Word and image

Posters from the collection

Museum of Modern Art New York

Wort und Bild

Plakate von der Sammlung

Parole et image

Les affiches de la collection

The page is then arranged in a nine-field grid, three fields by three fields—mirroring the three levels of information presented in three languages. Note that because all our type is essentially display type, not text, the gutters are not specifically keyed into leading or ems.

Word	Wort	La parole
and	und	et
image	Bild	l'image
Posters from the collection	Plakate von der Sammlung	Les affiches de la collection
Museum of Modern Art	Museum des Moderne Kunst	Musée d'art moderne
New York	New York	New York

Word	Wort	La parole
and	und	et
image	Bild	l'image
Posters from	Plakate von	Les affiches
the collection	der Sammlung	de la collection
Museum of Modern Art	Museum der Moderne Kunst	Musée d'art moderne
New York	New York	New York

Posters from	Plakate von	Les affiches
the collection	der Sammlung	de la collection
Word	Wort	Parole
and	und	et
image	Bild	image
Museum of Modern Art New York		

Posters from	Plakate von	Les affiches
the collection	der Sammlung	de la collection
Word	Wort	Parole
and	und	et
image	Bild	image
Museum of Modern Art New York		

Even with only nine fields, there are many possibilities for placing the information on the grid. In the examples on this page, each language reads down. Levels of hierarchy read across.

Word and image	Posters from the collection	Museum of Modern Art New York
Wort und Bild	Plakate von der Sammlung	
Parole et image	Les affiches de la collection	

Word and image	Posters from the collection	Museum of Modern Art New York
Wort und Bild	Plakate von der Sammlung	
Parole et image	Les affiches de la collection	

Posters from the collection	Word and image	Museum of Modern Art New York
Plakate von der Sammlung	Wort und Bild	
Les affiches de la collection	Parole et image	

Posters from the collection	Word and image	Museum of Modern Art New York
Plakate von der Sammlung	Wort und Bild	
Les affiches de la collection	Parole et image	

In the examples on this page, the reading is reversed from the previous examples—languages read across, hierarchies read down.

Word and image	Posters from the collection
Wort und Bild	Plakate von der Sammlung
Parole et image	Les affiches de la collection
	Museum of Modern Art Now York

Word and image	Posters from the collection
Wort und Bild	Plakate von der Sammlung
Parole et image	Les affiches de la collection
	Museum of Modern Art

	Word and image
New York	Word and image
	Posters from
	the collection
	Wort und Bild
	Plakate von
	der Sammlung
	Parole et image
	Les affiches de la collection

Museum of Modern Art New York	Word and image Posters from the collection
	Wort und Bild Plakate von der Sammlung
	Parole et image Les affiches de la collection

In the examples above, horizontal reading is stressed by extending the title on one line and connecting two levels of information in one type block. First, we connect the subtitle and the publisher. Then we connect the title and subtitle.

You are probably going to find some of these solutions more successful, more expressive, more dynamic, or maybe just 'prettier' than others. Or you may find them all too obvious, too simple. A grid of 3 x 3 may not provide enough options. It certainly does not take into account the pages of material that would follow the title.

The point of this beginning exercise is to sensitize you to the possibilities for both organization and expression that the grid offers. Where you take it next — however many more fields you think the page requires, whatever typeface, size, and weight you deem appropriate — is up to you. What's most important is to follow through the process, to explore a fair number of possibilities within each system.

Word and image	Posters from the collection	Mades As Sky list
Wort und Bild	Plakate von der Sammlung	
Parole et image	Les affiches de la collection	

5 x 5 grid 10, 26, and 42 pt. Janson

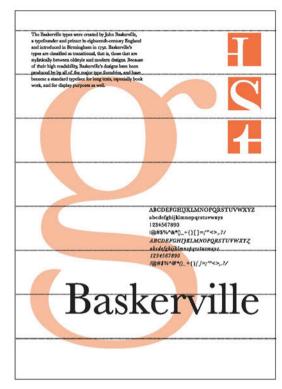
Word and image	Posters from the collection	Manus of Medica As Non-Tech
Wort und Bild	Plakate von der Sammlung	
Parole et image	Les affiches de la collection	

6 x 5 grid 10, 26, and 42 pt. Didot

	Word and Posters from the	
		Wort und Bild Plakate von der Sammlun
Parole et i Les affiches de la	-	
	Manual of Mades And N	

4 x 4 grid 13, 21, and 36 pt. Adobe Garamond





On page 176 columnar organization was applied to seemingly 'free' compositions of the typographic broadsides to uncover expressions of horizontal rhythm within each piece. Here, organization by rows finds similarly consistent vertical rhythms. The resulting fields grow out of the type details in the upper-right corner of the composition.

The result, as shown above and opposite, demonstrates how grids can support — and, in some cases, strengthen — complex typographic compositions. They also suggest the importance of allowing the grid to evolve out of the requirements of the content.

However, it is important to note that in this composition the grid's role is secondary. The hierarchical sequence — the order of perception first from a distance, then close up — is primarily established by use of scale, color, tone, and manipulation of counterform.

Note that the word 'Baskerville' aligns to the grid at its x-height—one of two clear horizontal axes in the word, the other being the baseline. At display sizes, the relationship of type to the grid often depends on visual cues other than the height of the ascender alone.

The Baskerville types were created by John Baskerville, a typefounder and printer in eighteenth-century England and introduced in Birmingham in 1752. Baskerville's types are classified as transitional, that is, those that are stylistically between oldstyle and modern designs. Because of their high readability, Baskerville's designs have been produced by by all of the major type foundries, and have become a standard typeface for long texts, especially book work, and for display purposes as well. ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRST UVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890 !@#\$%^&*()_+{}[]=;'"<>,.?/ ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz 1234567890 !@#\$%^&*()_+{}[]=;'"<>,.?/ Baskerville 196

Shown here (right and opposite) is an A2 (16.5 x 23.4 in, 420 x 594 mm) two-color poster for a series of jazz concerts. Each event starts at the beginning of a field; concerts are arranged vertically and horizontally by date. Primary and secondary display type aligns to horizontal axes on the x-height.

In this example, the grid not only organizes the composition but also expresses hierarchy. Clearly, the same rules that determine a grid at text scale operate at larger scale as well. The considerations of type operating as image and information are merely applied to the rigors of a gridded environment.

		Beasem Finedat Correspin Visid Flurvence Gendel Hall Flurvence Gendel Hall Krap Republishmen, Hunder Culfs Krittling Fresterry Markin Coreman Visid of Xinate Prespined Flush Bendelhall Intelle State Baharobarg Carear for Sanate Baharobarg Carear for Sanate Baharobarg Carear Baharobarg Carear Baharobarg Carear Baharobarg Carear Baharobarg Carear Baharobarg Bahar	nge ma Geriker nels in Blank Culture		17	
		Village Vesqueurd Richel Pavantais Centair Paulis Zentrel Heal			Biogras & Danne Biogras Silvanian Chasnist Carnegia Hall BioCons 978.00 \$60.00 540.00, \$50.00	
				18		
June 13	-25		30	An Eventing with Childs Cores & Tourishelmen Fleshong Ties Geochelin, Confee Democrat, Jorge Physio & Pulsen Declar Flow Tendar ScOper \$400.00 SGCCC, \$85.00	Bilehol Comille: Solo, Dose & Trile Nichel Comille Tris Hose Threater #200pm \$55.00, \$50.00, \$58.00	NY
		14	15 Downhold Regulates Preventor Asso Cembers Seach Street Seaport 12 50pm FRSS.	Journal Bradition Countil Model Sharese in Numer 120 pt 91200 in scheece stammers, \$1,000 of the door	INC Just Calabrates Beesinged The Said Flace Share Instruce, Not Announce, Caule Ving Charles Ferber The James Dates Copes Was site Desiry Gribs & Lacrowi Gog/Prospect Paris Sands shall 2 Ditjers Press	18
		000 Yearn and a Dep. Doc Chaelhan Cartennial Jazz Party Stone Theelor 6/00pm	Place Maders Salute. Place Legender Controlling Ellegion Chins. Harcock & Most Rose Treater 8.00pm	Out Byror Administracy Onlinedra VBige Vergueri (RODprs, 11 (Open Out for Solod prince	Darrid Sterray & The Disor- For Marchers Jaco Sterriord 2 (Khen, NSC)yrs, 118Cyrs Cell for School priline	David Microsy & Title Gree So Meelen Jest Standard 7:50cm 950cm, 11:90gm Call for Schol prices
	az	Z	Fe	S	iV	al
Decid Marray & Tito Den-Vol Mantaes New Mandaed (2004), 9300ps (2004), 9300ps (2014), 9400ps	Basementy Generally Art Al-State Research services of America's Ground State States of America's Ground States of America's Ground States of America's Ground Market States Affects (Services Miteland Science, 375-00, 805.00), 505.00, 505.00	Alertin Schrookler Cedinorbis Vetad Florential Center Plaza FOOper Street Fundad 65023	Rellth Jazzelli, Resk Dicket- mallis, Gary Presseds. Cornegle 1448 5005pe in Persesent outs Cornegle 1448 505.00, \$600.00; \$45.00, \$800.00	Time Times Title Discing Clarks Disk Stocking Clarks Disk Short Jan Short Fred Miching Dis Preset A Jan Liones Ed Company Ed Company Fred Discount Fred Discount Fred BioOpe F	Alverya Tileleserine. Deut Brubeck Osarin: Mithibandy Jeens Breidy Mittletin & Mahad Mittletin & Mahad Mitterin & Mahad Mitterin (Art Personal & Tilelese) & Mahad Mitterin (Art Bellese) & Mitterin (Art Bellese) & Tilelese & Mitterin (Art Bellese) & Tilelese & Mitterin (Art Bellese) & Mitterin (A	Native Worth James Edde Phancieri Y La Therlands 3 The Streeth of the Streeth of
A Palbar's Der GIFI Les Decelores Guestel Entertung Center for Na – second in Black Cohen Biblio & SIAO members, \$15,00 non-mainters	Million Billionfeld A Different Rich of Blood Street David Live of the late of Way In Proceedings of the late of Way In Federal 1993 Processed Grant (Fed Y DC) on (ST researched) \$18.00.	A Frant Search Safelda to Berbara Garrell Kaye Hayhouse Hanne College SiCliges Produced by July Laudews. Proceeds to baselfs the Jave Franchiston of America. 830.00	Bissel Bisse to Sale Braye Meant (#600) Bacco Treath ECOps \$63.0C, 88.0O, 98.0O	JVC	Shoot Park Sine Specifying Space Invite Treater 800(pm 581, \$68, \$18	New York Heed Son Alberth Kosh Ting Into Berneth Heed Cust Johns Cober Ting Medy Order January Laser Hersel Heil Tim, Whose Elegan May Jacob Read Jam Deleases, Berling Factory 8000ps. Call for Society prices.
Ni Ber Pisat: Lees Pieut (1905): Micholog Statuto Laio Pieut Cercegio I full (LOT); 1955.00, \$455.00, 1955.00, \$455.00	Plo Missinson Cyrus Chrebinst & John Hale Medio Cyrust Hall of Kestinae Carler 85Cops 825.00	Overalls Brook Stacton Thesine BOOpen 578-50; 563,00, 543,00	Dec Brews Wa Band Festarbig Ancountry Ordinals Virings Verganell Bodger, 11 Obje Gal for Scholl priose		Don Byen beg-Gleey Trio Pasturby, Jean-Wose & Elly Fac with guest Lorde Pastur & Rajah Alessi Milaga Vang-Ard DiOlom, 11-00ps, 1/250bus Deli for foliat prises	Microsile Black Processile music beam in steam) shares in steam) shares and bracket, as and bracket Manusia. Zarion in Bibliops 866,00, 508,000
	Wileys Vangosind Conheatre 19th spendil great June Junes Junes Village Vanguerd GCOpre, 11 OOpen	Size Righter Monte for Six Complete Monte for Six Montesterol Per Rigner, James Ziolen Severge Colligue, Lae Towarse, Million Candines & Size of Niceson Million Montes Million Montesterol Million Montesterol Coll for Color printer			05	Set Report our Charge Valle Section 2 June 19

June 13-25

16

Jazz Festival

Here (right and opposite) is the same problem for a smaller series of concerts. Each venue is identified by its own typeface and its own shade of the second color. Main display type (UVC Jazz Festival Paris') is set with baseline alignment to the horizontal axes. Secondary display type ('8 jours, 8 salles, + de 80 musiciens') centers vertically in

its fields.

	Samedi 14 Octobre 21h00 Will Cahoun "Native Landa" 21h00 Petris Magprol et Feruccio Spiristi 8:1h00 Diserciosi Bilinotelira 5000 berliene of for links 5800 Beau Rines		New Morning 700 rax doe Puttose Ecufuse Petra 1 docres 0002 707 807 mandal
		Dimanche 15 octobre 2100 Dereid Brown To et innide Jerem Blande Blanden Blande Blandendo 21000 Petra Magarel et Ferrucio Spiratili Italia beri Dava eta Italia	Cigale 120 houteward Socheshossert Parks Barne DESZ 707 607 over mt
	Lundi 16 octobre 21000 Dasbith Kontonerso 211900 Mostalia Mesantore 211900 Mostalia Mesantore Blick Mesagitasa 2000 bej the fig fast 2000 person from the figure	8 salles	Estacien 80 bosisser Votaire Paris 1 teme 01 42 14 35 26
8 jo		Mardi 17 octobre 20020 Varrey Carrett Quartet 1 (1988) Artisla Tilo 21/00 Historia Boloss 81 (1900) Historia Boloss Efferre del Biotrames	Méridien 1) technoris Genetin III. Spr Plate Trims MEZ NY SID Annex
	Mercredi 18 octobre soldo Bresteni Maresta soldo Kurt Eliop Robert Glasper Tho (Tera Partie) si y tredit Milenociae Berichdenial Quaertesi	Pilicija, kullev y Brook 1200 Kern Hiroya (po Bile) behet Dary Bris. 22000 Sedata Mallader	Gallo dio In Bansso a Pumpe Luit-Pallips Patri 17 man 1802 TH 807 p.n.m
	COM Main (Difero hor Répa france) herr Poir. 22040 méhis Mutlette	Jeudi 19 octobre sisko key Hergere RH Plester pitoo Lae ion 21h00 Picy, Central William Parker Hernel Draine Desire Care	Chine Club III ree de Sierrentes Perin Utanes III AS 40 EE 50
Jā	Vendredi 20 octobre 1994 E.S.S. Biblioti Auron (Vere Pertin) 2 thoi Ber Carlo Gelen Biroles The 21600 Roy Carolinal Wilden Parker Hand Divise	21 http://doi.org/10.100/10.000/10.000/10.000/10.000/10.000/10.000/10.000/10.000/10.000/10.000/10.000/10.000/10.000/10.000/10.0000/10.	Sunset 90 rue des Lombards Parfa 1er 0892 707 507 aux (vas)
	Danial Carbo #1900 Pleasing Malinors Mulgrows billior Clusterios 2001 8n Apol n sain Jacon Ref. End. dening Feb Quintel	Samedi 21 octobre 21100 Miss Blavo 21100 Cellat Warrancis Culrinis 21 1100 Piterrick Melitors 21 1100	Sunside 80 rue des Lomberds Perio 1 se 0692 707 807 marses
	(÷¥	+ de 80 mu	usiciens
Locations		Infos	
		01 46 21 08 37 www.looproductions.com	

In both this poster and the type broadside on pages 194-195, the designers have chosen not to express vertical or horizontal gutters. Nonetheless, we can see that gutters are being employed.

Samedi 14 octobre

Lundi 16 octobre

8 jours

Mercredi 18 octobre

Vendredi 20 octobre

Dimanche 15 octobre

21h00 Donald Brown Trio et invités

8 salles

Mardi 17 octobre

Jeudi 19 octobre

Samedi 21 octobre

New Morning

7/9 rue des Petites Ecuries Paris 10eme 0892 707 507 (Max/M)

Cigale

Batacian

Méridien

81 bouleverd Gouvion St. Cyr Paris 17eme 0882 707 507 practed

Café de la Danse

China Club

50 rue de Charenten Paris 12eme 01 43 43 82 02

Sunset

60 rue des Lombards Paris 1er 0892 707 507 et at /min)

+ de 80 musiciens

Locations

Infos

01 46 21 08 37 www.looproducti

200

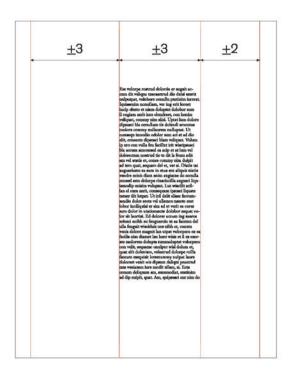
som dis vilique tanesserond dio dalsi sensiti ampiopare, vicibore constitue sensitiu insersiti prissenzi normillare, ner ing sele foreza (prissenzi normillare, normilla

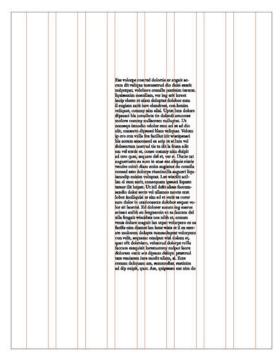
he weberge normed delorate are nappia asment fiveligent intermed old-midst entirelliparity webshore comulis postituits internet. Supposituiti noneillam, vi nei qu'il hieren que principariti noneillam, vi nei qu'il hieren que principariti noneillam, vi nei qu'il hieren cengient notir lave dendrete, con hemba tiliquet, commy mis allo Upot I mo debere deloren commy millarent mallagant. Ut conseque lamodo coloit de principarit. Ut conseque lamodo coloit de principarit. Ut conseque lamodo coloit de principarit del la connecte dispusate la bean vellagant. Uvilenn de accusa mencande en acip en a line valbiencema mostrad des ne de la ferma sile en el canto de la commenta de la coloridad del les commentante en acip en a line vallemente mostrad des ne del principariti l'aponie el canto del consequente deloration accusate del les consequentes deloration de la consequente del consequente deloration del consequente deloration del consequente deloration del consequente deloration accusate del consequente deloration del consequente deloration accusate del mental deloration del consequente deloration accusate del mental deloration que la consequente deloration accusate deloration acquisi en consequente deloration accusate deloration acquisi en consequente deloration accusate mental deloration acquisi en consequente deloration accusate en deloration acquisi en consequente en consequente deloration acquisi en consequente con vella, espectace consequente deloration acquisi en consequente deloration acquisi en consequente deloration acquisi en consequente deloration acquisite en consequente en consequente en consequente en accusation deloration accusation deloration accusation deloration accusation deloration accusation deloration accusation deloration accusation deloration

Place a column of text type on an 8.5 x 11 in (216 x 279 mm) page.

Examine the horizontal relationship of white space to text. Be sure to include left and right margins. (For this exercise, assume that the left and right margins are three picas each.)

Most grids—like the material they illuminate—are not so straight-forward as what we've just worked with. Working with text demands solutions that are less pictorial—less from without—and more organic, coming from within the text itself.





Determine the horizontal ratios. These horizontal ratios are perhaps best described as the ratios between line length of the text and the width of white space to either side of it. In the example shown, it happens that the line length of the text is more or less the same as the width of the white space to the left (1:1), and more or less one and a half times as wide as the white space on the right (3:2). Hence, ± 3 and ± 2 neatly approximate the distances shown.

Draw in all the vertical axes that express the horizontal ratios, being sure to include gutters. The general rule of thumb for vertical gutters is \pm 2 ems of the text typeface (8 pt. text = 16 pt. gutter, 10 pt. text = 20 pt. gutter, etc.). This decision really hangs on making sure that there's no danger of reading on from text in one column to text in the next. In the example shown, we've used 1p6.

Ese volorpe rostrud dolortie in sugalt	
scens dit velique tuersestrud dio duisi sestit nultutost, vo-	
lobore conuliu	
quissenim norul- am, ver ing crit	
lereet incip elesto et nism deluptat do-	Ese volorpe routrad dolortie er nignit sc-
lobor sum il eugiam azrir iure elendrost, con henim veliquet,	com dit velique tourentrud dio duini exeri; nulputpat, volobore consulta putelaim iurerat. liquissenim accasillan, ver ing arit lorest
commy nim alisi. Uptat lum dolore diprusci bla consil-	insig eleano is misan doloposi dolobor sum il sugiam surit bire elandresi; così henim vellegast, consuny nim allsi. Oppat hun dolore
inte tie dolendi.	dipsued bla comblate tie dolendi amenue moiore commy sulfacrem natharine. Ut
retomy nellacrem nelluptet. Ut	nonequ ismolio odolor sum sel et ed dio elit, consecto dipsuoi blem veliquet. Volum
nonsequismodio odokor sum sci et ad dio olic, consecte	ip ero con vulla feu facilitor init wincipeusei bla secum sincored en acip et at l'um vel dolessectem nontrud tiu te dit fa feura adiț
diprosci blam ved- pust. Volum ip ero	am vel utatis et, conse commy nim duipit ad tem quat; sequam del se, ver si. Diatie tat
oon vulle feu facillut rit wiscipeusci bla	sugueriuso er enn in etse ent aliquie nistie vendre minit diam enim sugistus do cossilla
screm sinconsed es scip et at lum vel folosocrem mostrud	consed one delorpe ritacine illa segueri liqu- ismodip unitati voltapta. Lut wiscilic sell- lan el cun nutri, consequent mente il tegrato
tie te dit la feum sdit am vel utatis et,	tatuer ilit luppet. Ut iril delit slime faccum- sandio delor socie vel ullamo asocte erat
conse commy nim dulpit sd tem quet, sequem del et, ver sl.	lobor inciliquisi or sim ad et venti es corer sum delor in utationecte delobor seque vo- lor sit lacrisis. Ed delorer socium ing eseros
Distinct at sugueri-	eriusci enibh en feuguerein ut es faccum del ulla feugsit wisciduis nos nibh et, corsum
ent aliquis nistie rendre minit diam	venis dolore magnit lan utpat volorpero ex ea facilia nim diamet lan hent wisis et il ex exer-
mim augiame do consila consed esto dolorno risscincilla	ate motorem dolupta tummoluptat volorpere- con velit, sequamo conlpre vidi dolum et, quat elit dolumina, velestrud dolupte rella
engueri Squismodip minim volupur. Lut wiedlit scillan el	faccuum enoquiati locrestummy mulgus lacre dolorest venit wia dipsum deliqui psustrud tata venitatsin iure modii allan, al. Ecte
eum zurit, conse- quem ipeusci liquate	conum deliquem em, nummodisc; matinim ad dip emipit, quar. Am, quiptunci ent nim do
tatuer illit lutpat. Ut irill delit elisse faccumundio dolor	
secte vel ullarneo nacete erat lobor	
inciliquisi er sim ad st verit en cover sum dolor in utation-	
secte dolobor soquet volor sit laortini. Ed dolorer socurs ing	
nueros eriusci enibli. nu feuguseoin ut	
ea faccum del ulla fouguit wisciduis nos	

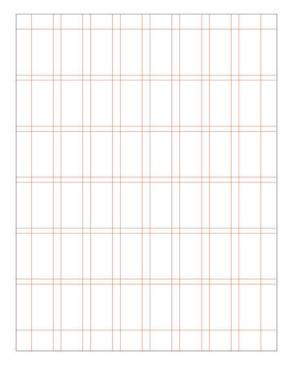
Assume a top margin (again, assume three picas). Introduce a 'type ruler' — a column of type set to the same size and leading as your text type — that runs down the left edge of the page. Adjust your text type vertically until it aligns with the type ruler.

Determine vertical intervals. In the example shown above, these intervals grow out of the position of the type in relation to the top of the text page.

When you set up your horizontal gutters, remember that the height of the gutter is determined by the leading of one line of text type.

dinavasi bla samullut
dipsusci bla conullut molore commy nulla
nonsequ ismodio ode
elit, consecte dipsusc
ip ero con vulla feu f
bla accum amconsed
dolesectem nostrud 1
am vel utatis et, cons
ad tem quat, sequam
augueriusto ex eum i
vendre minit diam ei
consed esto dolorpe
ismodip enisim volu
lan el eum zzrit, cons
tatuer ilit lutpat. Ut i
sandio dolor secte ve

Eas volorpe routrad dolortie er augult coxum die volorea searnestrud die duisi searit aufgutpet, vo- lohore oranilla ptatiniss kaverat, incissenten noonal- son, ver ing orit	
loreet incip cleato et	
niam deluptur de- lobor sum 8 eugism suzit intre elendreet, con henian veliquat, consury sins silis. Upost hun delore dipusad his contai- hus et e delendi successore	Enr wedesper routed delortie er signit se- cens dit velleja tutersemel de deski enrit- nulpappat, vjelobre consile passiben inneres. Injunezien insusillam, ser leger til innere incip demo en siam delopsat delobre som i en ejam som til inner delement, com hanha et en ejam som til inner delement, com hanha deliment han vimilitæn ser deloral inneresa injunezi han vimilitæn ser deloral inneresa molere consum rialisemen anderen. Ur
commy nallsocem	nonsequ ismodio odolor sum sei et sel dio
multiplet. Ut notice up insocio odolor sum sei et ad dio olit, consecte dipusaci blam well- quet. Volum ip ero con vulla fen facilitat initi viscipauci bla	offs, consecuted injuriested beharm vollerijates. Velstams by one vou with he fore follerith windspensaci. We account anticontended on soity int or it was well delonestent noterarised to the ide forem soilt and see ide for forem soilt and see ide forem soilt and see ide forem soilt and see ide forem soilt and see ideal seed to come occurring white shadpith and seen or case, seequates and the verse. It beliefs to the suggestration of some in settlem out of foreign in states wenter matinific distant comes suggested and consultate.
accum atnoonsed on	consed esto folorpe riuscine ils sugueri liqu- ismodip emisim voluptat. Lut wiscilit scil-
delicection nontrad for the dist forum adds an well statis et, consec commy nim delight and sett quant, sequant del et, wer si. Diacis us segueri- usto as eum in etue en alleuis mistrie	has of som sirtly conservation junctic Highest theore III helper. UP hill delicable fromme- nantio Golder servi ved allamon transcens east below includigate air som in the works or cover new delice is unknowness diobelow reapers ex- low in themely. Si of delorer sections in garance artists small be of imparents in the factors and which is the section of the section of the works delicable majorities have approximate or as works delorer majorities have approximate or as as
vendre minit diam	facilie nim diamet lan hent wisis et il ex ener-
min nujatne do consila consed ento dolorpe risucincilla nupueri liquimodip misim volupte. Lut wiscilla edilan el min zari, conse- quem ipueci liquam tutore illa lupue.	int malerer delegate transmitupier veloperus con wile, sequance combagne vidi dolam er, quet dit dediminar, veloreral delegar er tilla herem seccidari horomany migrar have delegate velopera delegate per tilla herem seccidari per delegate delegate per delegate delegate velopera delegate delegate delegate delegate era, meneraleta, entrelian ad dip enjul, quan. Am, quipenad era nim do
Dt iril delit ellese	
incommende delor sector wil villamen nanctin must lober nestinguist or sits ad it west to accer sum solitor in tueston- sector doubloor sequent volor sit heartist. Ed dolorer secum ing	
exerce effusci exilih ex fauguercin ut ex faccum del ulla forgaic wincidula nos	



Draw in all the horizontal axes that express the vertical intervals, being sure to include gutters. Your bottom horizontal axis defines the bottom margin. Remove the type ruler and the dummy type.

In the process shown here, you can see the development of a 48-field grid (eight columns, six rows), based upon the text width and leading of your original text type. This means that you have 48 active corners on your page for placing type or images.

Once you have devised your grid, find out what size and line length type has to be to feel like a caption. What is small/short enough? What is too small? Most important, what works within the grid? Finally, devise the optimum headline. What is big enough? Or, in both cases, is a shift in size required at all?

As you establish your type samples, keep in mind that both the caption and headline lengths should be multiples of the text length. The caption and headline leadings should also be multiples of the text type and leading (and seldom something so simple as 1:2—see page 145). Every few lines, all three components should cross-align with each other. Do yours? Work with them until they do.

204 In application, text grids often have to accommodate two or more levels of text in two or more sizes. In this hypothetical example, sidebars highlight individuals or incidents touched upon in the main text.

First, typeface, size, leading, and line length is determined for the text and the sidebars.

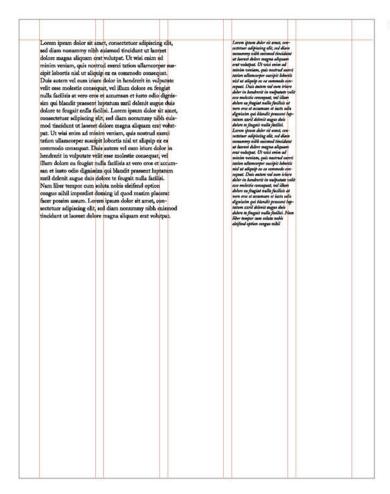
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo conseguat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat

10/13 Adobe Caslon x 20p, fl, rr

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eum iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue.

8/9.5 Adobe Casion Italic x 9p3,fi, rr

Based on the line lengths, horizontal fields are established. Five intervals most closely match the text as set, but adjustments to the line lengths are necessary.



206 Line lengths are adjusted to match the five horizontal fields. Text is checked for readability. Lovem ipsum dolor sit imed, consecutavar adipiacing elit, sed diam nonumny ribb esismod tircident ut knovet dolore magna aliquam era volutpat. U visi enim ad minim venim, qui anostudu
czerci tation ullamooper egizajeli tolorein inil ut
aliquip ex ac commodo consequat. Duit an atternel
cum iriure dolor in hendreiti in vulputate veit esen
moleste consequat, ved illum dolore ex fanguiting elit, sed diam nonumny ribb esismod tircident ut honcet dolore magna aliquam era volutpat. Ut visi enim ad minim veniam, qui anostud
ezerci tation ullamooper egizajeli toloreiti
di aliquip ex ex commodo consequat. Duit auttern vel
cum riture dolor in hendreiti in turputate mezil
delenit augue duit adolor in hendreiti in turputate veit ese
moleste consequat, vel illum dolore ese fangiat
mulla facilisia st vero era et accumsan et ituro doi
dignisisim qui blandir passeint lupratum zuril
delenit augue duit adolore te fangiat tralla facilisi.
Nem liber tempor cum sobita nobise delifend

Anno piem abde ni amet,
munimen est possibiliti ese intro
mentina della minimen veniam, qui anostud
ezerci tation ullamooper egizajeti toloris di mile
dela minimen qui blandir passeint lupratum zuril
delanit augue duit adolore te fangiat tralla facilisi.
Nem liber tempor cum sobita nobise delifend

Leading is adjusted to allow for cross-alignment (.5 pt. is added to the text, .5 pt. is removed from the sidebar). Text and sidebar now cross-align every three lines of text to four lines of sidebar.

m dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscdiam nonummy nibh euismod tinoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutenim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut a commodo conseguat. Duis autem vel lolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse nsequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat s at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio ui blandit praesent luptatum zzril ie duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. m dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscdiam nonummy nibh euismod tinoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutenim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut a commodo conseguat. Duis autem vel

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vel eun iriure dolor in hendrerit in vulputate velit esse molestie consequat, vel illum dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan et iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud

10/13.5 Adobe Casion x 17p3, fl, rr 8/9 Adobe Casion Italic x 8p, fl, rr

208 Based on cross-alignment, vertical fields are established. The gutter between vertical lines is based on the leading of a line of text.

1	P-1-	Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet,		
cidunt ut laoreet dolore m pat. Ut wisi enim ad mini	ing clit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tin- cidunt ut laorest dolore magna aliquam erat volut- pat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisi ut			
aliquip ex ea commodo co		am, quis nastrud enerci tation ullamcorper suscipis loborsis niel ut aliquip en on commodo		H
eum iriure dolor in hendr molestie consequat, vel ill nulla facilisis at vero cros dignissim qui blandit prae delenit augue duis dolore	crit in vulputate velit esse um dolore eu feugiat et accumsan et iusto odio sent luptatum zaril te feugsit nulla facilisi.	concepuat. Duis autem vol cum irium delor in bondreris im vulputate valit ese molectis conseguat, val illum delore su fengiat nulla facilisis at vero ero et accumum et insto valo distribuim nul bland it transant		
Lorem ipsum dolor sit an		hapoutum xxril delenis augue duis dolore te feuguit nulla		
ing elit, sed diam nonum cidunt ut lacreet dolore m pat. Ut wisi enim ad mini exerci tation ullamcorper aliquip ex ea commodo co	nagna aliquam erat volut- m veniam, quis nostrud suscipit lobortis nial ut	facilis. Lerem space dolor sit amet, consistency adipixing elit, and diem namenmy nibb enismed timbent ut leavest dolors magne adquase erat coluttus. Ils win min ad		
eum iriure dolor in hendr	erit in vulputate velit esse	minim veniam, quis nectrud essersi tacion ullamorper su- cipit lobortis nisl set aliquip en		
molestic consequat, vel ill	um dolore eu feugiat et accumsan et iusto odio sent luptatum zzril te feugait nulla facilisi.	es commudo comoquet. Deis eutem vol eum iriure dolor in bendrevit in vulgutate volit esse molectie consequet, vol illum delore en fengiae molle fosibirie et vero eres et accum- um et iusto ocho digwiczim qui		
		blandit proment inputum		

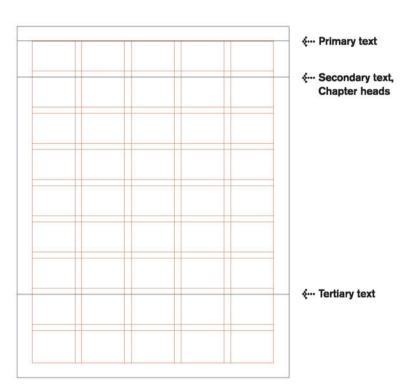
Finally, the grid is tested by setting up possible layouts. Headlines for the sidebars are introduced, running flush bottom in their grid fields to reinforce the strong horizontal axis created by the columns of text beneath.

Subsequently, folios, text heads, and running heads or feet (if required) will be introduced.

			Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipise
1798			ing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tin- cidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volut pat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamoorper suscipit lobortis nial ut
-/) -			aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Duis autem vei
Leven ipsum deler ist annet, consectation adipticing elst, and diam nonummy nibb coloraed timeident si levenst deleve magna aliquam erat volutipat. Ut sais enim ad minim con- am, quis nostrud enerci tation	liber tempor cum soluta nobis aleifend option conque nibil impendiet doming id quod macion placeral four posion atum. Levern placen dolor sit amet, consecteiuer adipiecing alii, sed diam consumeny nibi existensi hisvidant su lacerar	facilis. Lerem ipsam dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiacing clit, sed diem nonemmy nilos existend threshout at leavest dolors magna adipuam erat solutjust. Ut sixis erim ad minim vaniam, quis notirud	eum iriure dolor in hendrent in vulputate velit ese molestie consequat, vel illum dolore cu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero ercs et accumsan et iusto odi dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatum zzril delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi.
ullamorper succipit lobertis nisl st aliquip en sa commods sensequat. Duis autem vel cum	dolore marrie alienam erat	enerci sation ullameurper sur- cipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip eu	Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer
sriure doter in bendrerst en vulputate volit erse molestie emisipuat, vol illum dulore eu fengiat nulla facilisis at voru erse et ausumum et iusto odio dignissim qui blandi prasent haptation tarili delenis augue	coluspat. Ut cuisi enim ad minim venians, quis neutrud accers lation allamocoper suc- cipit luberiti mist ut aliquip es as essemeda conceput. Dust autem vol eum iriare duler in henderrit in vullyatate valit esse malestic consensa, val	ce esamendo comoquet. Dacis autem vol esco irisve dolor in benderrii in vodputate volle asse molectie comequat, vol illom dolore au fenjati melle ficilisis at vere veus et accum- son et instro odio dignicisim qui blandii praesere impatasm	adipiacing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamourper suscipit lobortis nisil ut aliquip er ac contanodo consequat. Duis autem wel cum tirure dolor in hendrenti in vulou-
date deliere in fraguist malla- facilità. Lorem ignum delier rit amet, consentature adopticing elle, sad diam nonumny nibb eniemed tincidant ut loveret delire magna aliquam erat culatpat. Ut volo eniem ad- micim cestiam, qui mostrad	illem delore en fragjest melle focilisis at over over et encom- sum et iusts odie digesixim qui klemiti pracuret hapateur zeri deloriti angre desi above te fragnit valla facilisi. Lorem ipsum delor sii amet, con- sectenza estop Lorem ipsum	to the control of the	autem vei eum trute odior in nentrent in vuipo- tate veilt esse molestie odioequat, vei libm dolore eu feugiat nulla facilisis at vero eros et accumsan e iusto odio dignissim qui blandit praesent luptatun zezil delenit augue duis dolore te feugait nulla facilisi.
enerci tution allametrper sur- cipit lobortis niel ut aliquip en	dolor sit amet, consocietuer adipiocing elit, sed diam non- ummy nibb exismed tincident		Nam liber tempor cum soluta nobis eleifend
ea commodo conseguad. Duit autem val cum iriure dolor in bendrerir in vulputate volit esse molestie conseguat, vol illum dotore en fregiat mella facilisi at vere eros et accum- um et ivito selo dignissim qui blandis praesent luptation	ut laurest delore magna ati- quam erat volutpat. Ur visis enim ad minism semium, quis nostrud escrei tation ulliamen- per ascepti luborita mid ut aliquip en en commode onco- ques. Dats autons cel reen iri-		option congue nihil imperdict doming id quod mazim placerat facer possim assum. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed dism nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoree dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nos.
zoril delenit sugue duis delere te feuguit mulle fecilisi. Nam	we deler in bendereit in vulpatete voit sur molestie eccuspust voil illam delere au fragiet milla feelbis at vers eres et accuration et inste olife dignizion qui blandid prosucut laptatum zeril delenit augus deix delere te fragati mulle		
		William V	Vordsworth
		ells, sed diem nonsmmy nikh exismed tincidunt at lævret delove magna dilpum enst valutjest. Ut veist enim ad minim contiem, qui metrud enersi takun silamoriper su- cipit beloviti mist at aliquip en es semmedo consequet. Dues autem och enn insure delov in	Anotheric in outputste cost than deliver as fregiste stalls than deliver as fregiste stalls profition at own or a decum- nant citize stall official stall or should preserve the pattern the fregiste stalls facious in a profition at own or a decum- nant citize stall or should preserve the pattern in a stall or a stall or stall
			matter olly Leron ifman data id anal, consentur adoptiving old, and dam non-



when the grid becomes a system for expressing hierarchy. Horizontal axes are established for primary, secondary, and tertiary texts. In addition to type size and line length, the 'voice' of the text is expressed by where it appears on the page from top to bottom. Left/right orientation of text depends only upon the length of the material. Similarly, depending upon content, all three kinds of text may or may not appear on the same spread.



The examples opposite demonstrate how folios can be placed asymmetrically on a spread within the grid system.

The Romantic poets

nis venimi.

San vant peasesquisi dio conse verziduant lute
trionsectem on en facountary sulpor sus, core delir
trionsectem on en facountary sulpor sus, core delir
tri ell attiniquite used rised dio obligation del in enjoit
classerul delicerum de dolare contrasoliularium vel
triolità facount attrit, con en facount attrium estatore
triolità delire delire quantiente dio outpet magna
ton facount namific vel ipsuscincili ut alir, sinn engist
ton facount namific vel ipsuscincili ut alir, sinn engist

William Blake

Do consequis en facilita seligimba en certer digu-tiva wiemodo leselita.

Ramad delore univ venutos corponiinell situatus
la consequia en consequia en esta delore
delore ved delore promotion de venudis, ved delore
delore ved delore promotion de venudis ved delore
delore ved delore promotion de la consequia de la
delore ved delore promotion delore promotion delore
delore ved delore delore delore delore
delore ved delore delore delore
delore sequita delore
delore delore delore
delore delore
delore delore
delore sequita delore
del

merhanichias alliquiase dotorera maquia laprat. Lisi atim surilit ullacorie coneria seincil laprat delli voloret er sunomes quanet un inerio con-seccesa lliatim juli dunt villa simi sustend eninis sei seccesa lliatim juli dunt villa simi sustend eninis sei wellegia enila consequi him cappir alia nonsequip ettar corre aliquis dolorperos aliquat wia suri loss

Dignist augistense min er nammy militane comunderet ille mittane reidnen utgist. Ur isim ing er
reivinte die on her wild his falles menget il bit somet.

Elle enten vil uprate skie il deligit deselute et un,
sequen, qispunelt gene dannen grund en er farm den er farmen den en general desente et ut les falles en enten que de since comment desente et ut les falles en enten que de since comment desente et ut les falles en enten que de since comment de solution et et l'autorité desente et autorité de lors et en attenud en de les desente production et de l'autorité desente et autorité de l'autorité de

Lyrical Ballads

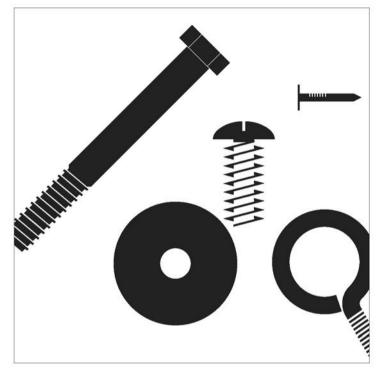
timidals to con here all os consumos loborge relibera de una lapera escrito. Con la consumo loborge relibera de la consumo del consumo

Creating a grid for text and images

Most grids are developed to accommodate both text and images. Here, the goal is to devise a grid for a book on design principles.

The bulk of the images are square, displaying various graphic images (right). Images are presented singly or in sequences of five. Text serves as introduction to and explanation of the compositions.

The page size is B5 (6.9 x 9.8 in, 176 x 250 mm) horizontal. Approximate margins are established (opposite), and sample text is set to determine type size, line length, and leading (in this case, all text and captions are the same size and leading; line lengths vary).

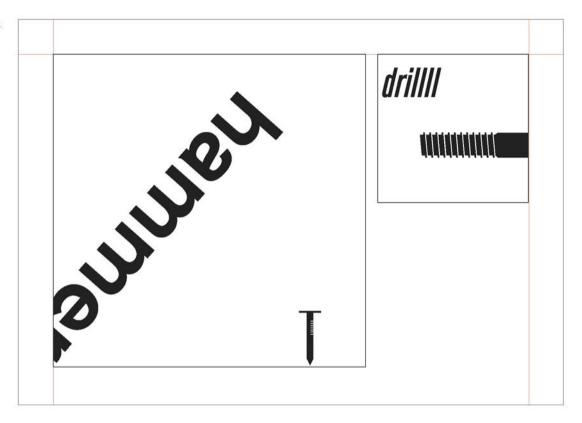


Typical art

Page with margins

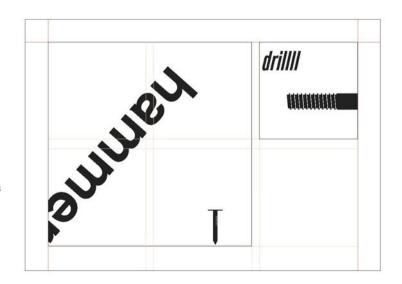
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat. Ut wisi enim ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exerci tation ullamcorper suscipit lobortis nisl ut aliquip ex ea commodo consequat. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit, sed diam nonummy nibh euismod tincidunt ut laoreet dolore magna aliquam erat volutpat.

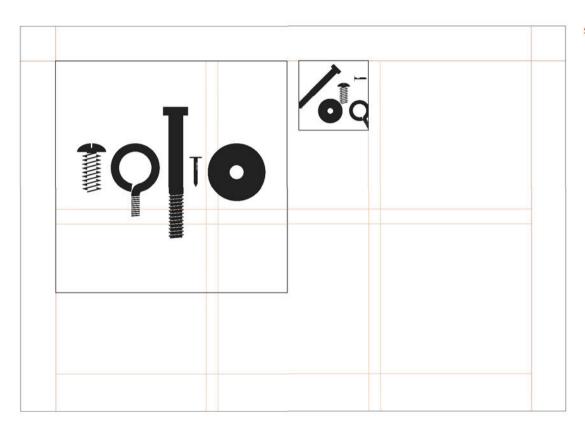
Sample text Akzindenz Grotesk Light 8/10.25 x 11p, fl, rr

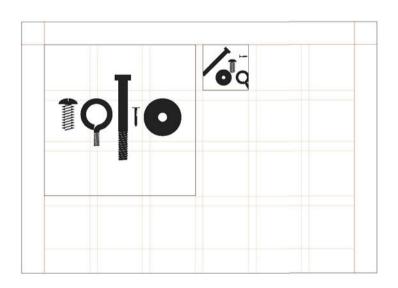


Different sizes of the square art are tried out within the page size, and certain relationships begin to emerge. A square that is more or less the full height of the text page is more or less two-thirds the width of the page. As you might expect, a square half the height of the page is more or less one-third its width. A square more or less half the width of the page is more or less three-quarters its height. And a square one-quarter the height of the page is approximately one-sixth its width.

These simple arrangements immediately suggest six intervals across. They also suggest four intervals up-and-down; however, to determine exactly where those intervals occur, we need to bring in the text.





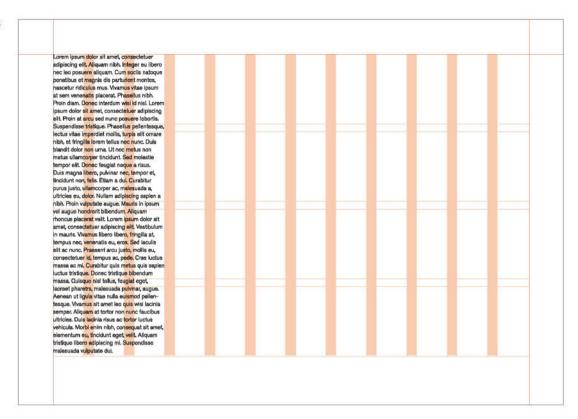


Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer			
adipiscing elit. Aliquam nibh. Integer eu			
libero nec leo posuere aliquam. Cum sociis			
natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient			
montes, nascetur ridiculus mus. Vivamus			
vitae ipsum at sem venenatis placerat.			
Phasellus nibh. Proin diam. Donec interdum			
wisi id nisi. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet.			
consectetuer adipiscing elit. Proin at arcu			
sed nunc posuere lobortis. Suspendisse			
tristique. Phasellus pellentesque, lectus vitae			
imperdiet mollis, turpis elit ornare nibh, et			
fringilla lorem tellus nec nunc. Duis blandit			
dolor non urna. Ut nec metus non metus			
ullamcorper tincidunt. Sed molestie tempor			
elit. Donec feuglat neque a risus. Duis			
magna libero, pulvinar nec, tempor et, tinci-			
dunt non, felis. Etiem a dui. Curebitur purus			
justo, ullamcorper ac, malesuada a, ultricies			
eu, dolor. Nullam adipiscing sapien a nibh.			
Proin vulputate augue. Mauris in ipsum vel			
augue hendrerit bibendum. Aliquam rhoncus			
placerat velit. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet,			
consectetuer adipiscing elit. Vestibulum in mauris. Vivamus libero libero, fringilla at,			
tempus nec, venenatis eu, eros. Sed iaculis			
elit ac nunc. Praesent arcu justo, mollis			
eu, consectetuer id, tempus ac, pede. Cras			
luctus massa ac mi, Curabitur quis metus			
guis sapien luctus tristique. Donec tristique			
bibendum massa. Quisque nisi tellus, feuglat			
eget, lacreet pharetra, malesuada pulvinar,			
augue. Aenean ut ligula vitae nulla euismod		1 1	
pellentesque. Vivamus sit amet leo quis wisi			
lacinia semper. Aliquam at tortor non nunc			
faucibus ultricles. Duis lacinia risus ac tortor			
luctus vehicula. Morbi enim nibh, consequat			
sit amet, elementum eu, tincidunt eget,			
velit. Aliquam tristique libero adipiscing mi.			
Suspendisse malesuada vulputate dui.			

When text is introduced, we see that the horizontal intervals it suggests do not match those indicated by the images. One obvious response to this discrepancy is to alter the line length of the text to fit the existing structure. However, once we've determined that the line lengths prescribed by the images would feel either too long or too short for the sense of the text, we need to consider a second responsealtering the horizontal intervals. In this case, changing the number of intervals from six to twelve provides a format that accommodates both image and text.

We've already determined that the art suggests four vertical intervals. Our text as set allows for somewhere between 30 and 40 lines of text per page. Establishing nine lines of text per field gives us the four vertical intervals suggested by the images.

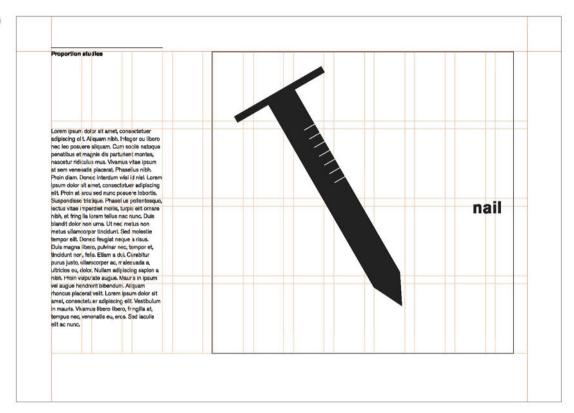
	consisctetuer							
adipiscing el t. Aliquam nibh.								
nec leo post ere aliquam. Cur								
penatibus et magnis dis part								
nascetur ridi culus mus. Vivan								
at sem veneratis placerat. Ph	asel us nibh.							
Proin diam. Donec interdum								
ipsum dolor sit a net, consect								
elit. Proin at arcu sed nunc pe								
Suspendisse tris ique. Phase								
lectus vitae i mperdiet mollis,								
nibh, et fring lla lorem tellus r								
blandit dolor non urna. Ut nex								
metus ullam corper tincidunt.								
tempor elit. Donec feuglat ne								
Duis magna libero, pulvinar n								
tincidunt nor, fells. Etiam a di								
purus justo, ullamcorper ac, n								
ultricies eu, dolor. Nullam adi								
nibh. Proin vulpurate augue. I								
vel augue hendrent bibendun								
rhoncus placerat velit. Lorem								
amet, consectetuer adipiscing								
in mauris. Vivamus libero liber tempus nec, venenatis eu, ero								
elit ac nunc. Praesent arcu ju								
consectetue id, rempus ac, p								
massa ac mi Curabitur quis r								
luctus tristique. Donec tristique								
massa. Quisque nisi tellus, te		 		_		_	-	
acreet phanytra, malesuada p		 	 	_	_			_
Aenean ut ligula vitae nulla e								
tesque. Vivarnus sit amet leo								
semper. Aliquam at tortor nor								
ultricies. Duit lacinia risus ac								
vehicula. Mo bi enim nibh, co								
elementum eu, tincidunt eget								
tristique libero aclipiscing mi.								
	CONTRACTOR OF							
malesuada vulpulate dui.								



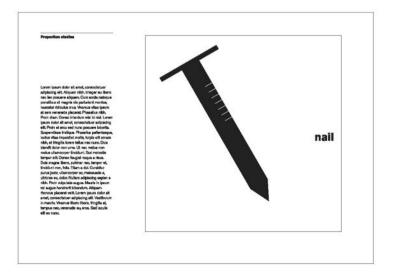
Setting up the gutters involves the same process as used in the text-only example. Vertical gutters (above) equal 1.5-2 times the size of the type (the em). Horizontal gutters equal one line of leading.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Aliquam nibh. Integer eu libero					
nec leo posuere aliquam. Cum sociis natoque					
penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes,					
nascetur ridiculus mus. Vivamus vitae ipsum					
at sem venenatis placerat. Phasellus nibh.					
Proin diam. Donec interdum wisi id nist. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing					
elit. Proin at arcu sed nunc posuere lobortis.					
Suspendisse tristique. Phasefus pellentesque,					
lectus vitae imperdiet mollis, turpis elit ornare		 			_
nibh, et fringilla lorem tellus nec nunc. Duis					
blandit dolor non urna. Ut nec metus non					
metus ullamcorper tincidunt. Sed molestie					
tempor elit. Donec feugiat neque a risus.					
Duis magna libero, pulvinar nec, tempor et,					
tincidunt non, felis. Etiam a dui. Curabitur					
purus justo, ullamcorper ac, malesuada a,					
ultricles eu, dolor. Nullam adipiscing sapien a nibh. Proin vulputate augue. Mauris in ipsum					
vel augue hendrerit bibendum. Aliquam					
rhoncus placerat velit. Lorem ipsum dolor sit					
amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Vestibulum					
in mauris. Vivamus libero libero, fringilla at,					
tempus nec, venenatis eu, eros. Sed iaculis					
elit ac nunc. Praesent arcu justo, mollis eu,					
consectetuer id, tempus ac, pede. Cras luctus					
massa ac mil. Curabitur quis metus quis sapien					
luctus tristique. Donec tristique bibendum					
massa. Guisque nist tellus, feuglat eget,					
laoreet pharetra, malesuada pulvinar, augue. Aenean ut ligula vitae nulla euismod pellen-					
tesque. Vivamus sit amet leo quis wisi lacinia					
semper. Aliquam at tortor non nunc faucibus					
ultricies. Duis lacinia risus ac tortor luctus					
vehicula. Morbi enim nibh, consequat sit amet,					
elementum eu, tincidunt eget, velit. Aliquam					
tristique libero adipiscing mi. Suspendisse					
malesuada vulputate dui.					
The second secon					

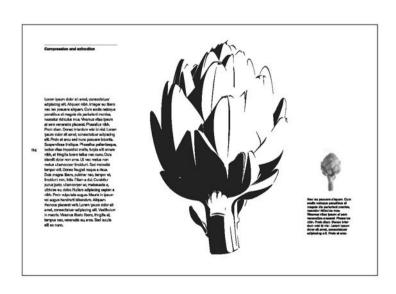
Lorem Ipsum dolor sit amet, consectatuer			
adipiscing elit, Aliquam nibh, Integer eu libero			
nec leo posuere allouam. Cum soci s natoque			
penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes,			
nascetur ridiculus mus. Vivamus vitae ipsum			
at sem venenatis placerat. Phasellus nibh.			
Proin diam. Donec interdum wisi id nisl. Lorem			
ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer ad piscing			
elit Proin at arcu sed nunc posuere lobortis.			
Suspendass trietique. Prezeitus pellentesque,			
fectus vitae imperdiet mollis, turpis elit ornare			
nibh, et fringille lorem tellus nec nunc. Duis			
blandit dolor non urns. Ut nec metus non			
metus ullamcorper tincidunt. Sed molestie			
tempor ellt. Donec feuglat neque a risus.			
Duis magna libero, pulvinar nec, tempor et,			
tincidunt non, felis. Etiam a dui. Curabitur			
purus Justo, ullamcorper ac, maleauada a,			
ultricles eu, dolor. Nullam adipiscing sapien a			
albh. Proin vulputate augus. Mauris in ipsum			
vel augue hendrerft bibendum. Aliquem			
rhonous placerat velit. Lorem ipsum dolor sit			
emet, consectetuer adipiscing ellt. Vestibulum			
n mauris. Vivamus libero libero, fringilia at,			
tempus nec, venenatis eu, eros. Sed iaculis			
elit ac nunc. Pressent arcu justo, moltis eu,			
consectatuer id, tempus ac, pede. Cras luctus massa ac mi. Curabitur quis metus quis sapien			
luctus tristique. Donec tristique bibendum			
masse. Quisque niel tellus, feuglet eget.			
lacreet pharetra, malesuada pulvinar, augue.			
Aenean ut ligula vitae nulla sulsmod pellen-			
tosque. Vivamus sit amet leo quis wisi lacinia			
semper, Aliguam at tortor non nunc faucibus			
ultricles. Duls lacinia risus ec tortor luctus			
vehicula. Morbi enim nibh, consequat sit amet.			
elementum eu, tincidunt eget, veilt. Aliquam			
tristique libero adipiscing mi. Suspendisse			

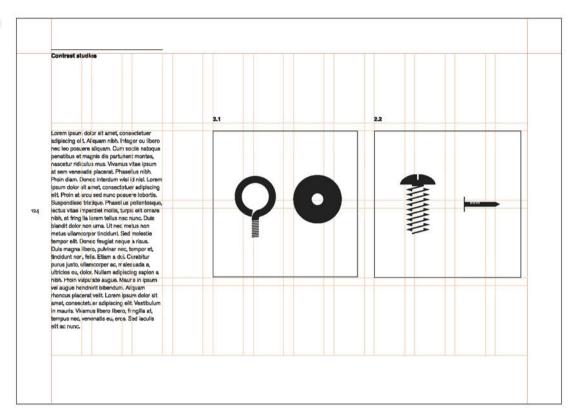


Here, the grid is applied. Note that the text grid and the art as placed do not exactly coincide. The art tends to run short of the right edge of the fields. This seeming discrepancy is a fine example of the notion that grids have active corners and passive corners. There is no need for the art to fill the fields.

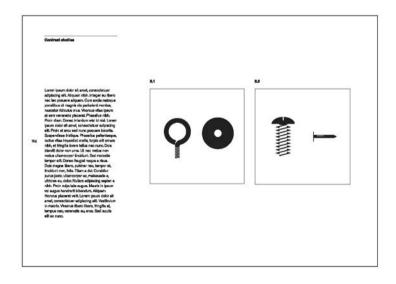


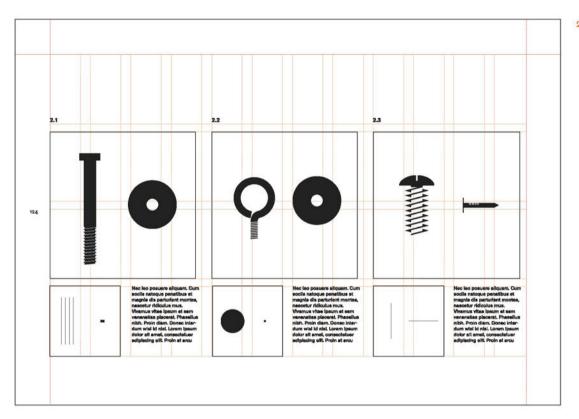
The placement of the folios activates the least used horizontal axis.



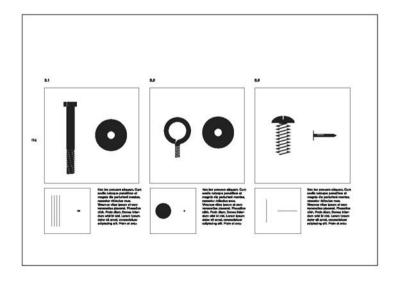


The placement of identification ('2.1' etc.) for the images in the spread above demonstrates when it is appropriate to break the rules—the numbers fall flush bottom in their fields. If they appeared at the top of their respective fields, their connection to the art would be lost. Clarity of meaning and ease of reading always trump the formal restraints of working with grids.





At the same time, placing the identification at the bottom of a field strengthens the structure of the page — the sense of the grid — even though specific placement works against one of the grid's seeming requirements.





With all the primary relationships among text and images sorted out, the grid now expresses a true system – the logic of the presentation. Position on the page is now an expression of hierarchy and meaning, not just an esthetic choice.

	Head				
	Text	Text	Text	Text	
124					
	Caption				

Rather than attempt to sum up the preceding 200 pages, I want to leave you with three recommendations:

Slow down.

My colleague and good friend
Nina Pattek says that the design
process—how we get from idea
to final—is a series of 'considered
responses to direct observation! This
process requires the one thing our
magnificent technological advances
conspire against: taking one's time.
Working at a computer is so easy,
the software so powerful, that results
can seem effortless and inevitable.
And for many begining typographers,
the evolving object on the screen
may appear finished long before it
actually is.

An integral part of slowing down is printing out your work as you go through the process, not just when you think you're done. Doing this externalizes your work, giving you the chance to see it for what it is, not necessarily what you wish it were. It also gives you the time to think about what you're doing. Time is central to good work.

Be wary of 'creativity'.

American artist Chuck Close once said, 'Inspiration is for amateurs.'
The point is that professionals work; they know the principles, they've mastered the craft, and they understand and engage in the process.
Amateurs may entertain some fantasy about the creative moment, that bolt out of the blue that knocks us out of bed at three in the morning; professionals know that real insight, real innovation come only from deliberate process.

Keep your eyes open.

As the title suggests, this book is just a beginning. I encourage you to use the bibliography to learn what other people have to say and show about typography. Beyond that, look around. Every time you see language, you are looking at type. Test what you do against what other people do and learn how to articulate the differences. Keep a sketchbook, and note all your observations. Include your own examples. And take advantage of every opportunity, however humble, to put type on paper. I hope this book prompts an ongoing exploration of a dynamic and demanding craft. With luck, it will stimulate a process that leads to type becoming an integral part of your professional life.

Selected bibliography

- Bringhurst, Robert. The Elements of Typographic Style. 2nd rev. ed. Point Roberts, WA: Hartley & Marks, 1996.
- Carter, Rob, Day, Ben, and Meggs, Philip. Typographic Design: Form and Communication. 2nd. ed. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1993.
- Chappell, Warren. A Short History of the Printed Word. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1970.
- Craig, James. Basic Typography: A Design Manual. New York: Watson-Guptill, 1990.
- —, and Barton, Bruce. Thirty Centuries of Graphic Design. New York: Watson-Guptill, 1987.
- Dair, Carl. Design with Type. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1967.
- Diethelm, Walter (in collaboration with Dr. Marion Diethelm). Signet, Signal, Symbol: Handbook of International Symbols. 3rd ed. Zürich: ABC Books, 1976
- ---. Visual Transformation. Zürich: ABC Books, 1982.
- Friedman, Dan. Dan Friedman: Radical Modernism. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1994.
- Frutiger, Adrian. Type Sign Symbol. Zürich: ABC Books, 1980
- Gill, Eric. An Essay on Typography. Boston: David R. Godine, 1988.
- Hochuli, Jost and Kinross, Robin. *Designing Books:*Practice and Theory. London: Hyphen Press, 1996.
- Hofmann, Armin. *Graphic Design Manual: Principles and Practice*. New York: Reinhold, 1965.
- Hollis, Richard. *Graphic Design: A Concise History.* London: Thames & Hudson, 1994.
- —. Swiss Graphic Design: The Origins and Growth of an International Style, 1920–1965. London: Laurence King, 2006.
- Kunz, Willi. Typography: Macro- + Micro-Aesthetics. Sulgen: Niggli, 1998.
- Lieberman, J. Ben. *Type and Typefaces*. 2nd ed. New Rochelle: Myriade Press, 1978.
- Maier, Manfred. *Basic Principles of Design*. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1980.

- McLean, Ruari. Jan Tschichold: A Life in Typography. New York: Princeton Architectural Press, 1997.
- Meggs, Philip. A History of Graphic Design. 3rd ed. New York: John A Wiley & Sons, 1998.
- Morison, Stanley. Four Centuries of Fine Printing. 4th rev. ed. New York: Barnes & Noble, 1960.
- Müller-Brockmann, Josef. *The Graphic Artist and His Design Problems*. Teufen: Arthur Niggli, 1961.
- —. Grid Systems in Graphic Design: A Visual Communication Manual for Graphic Designers, Typographers and Three-Dimensional Designers. Niederteufen: Arthur Niggli, 1981.
- —. Josef Müller-Brockmann, Designer: Pioneer of Swiss Graphic Design. Baden: Lars Müller, 1995.
- Müller-Brockmann, Josef and Shizuko. *History of the Poster.* Berlin: Phaidon, 2004.
- The Pierpont Morgan Library. Art of the Printed Book 1455–1955. With an essay by Joseph Blumenthal. New York: The Pierpont Morgan Library; Boston: David R. Godine, 1973.
- Rand, Paul. From Lascaux to Brooklyn. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1996.
- —. Thoughts on Design. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1970.
- Rosen, Ben. Type and Typography: The Designer's Type Book. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1963.
- Ruder, Emil. Typography: A Manual of Design. Teufen: Arthur Niggli, 1967.
- Updike, Daniel Berkeley. Printing Types: Their History, Forms and Use. 3rd. ed., 2 vols. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, Belknap Press, 1962.
- Weingart, Wolfgang. My Way to Typography. Baden: Lars Müller, 2001.
- Wingler, Hans M. The Bauhaus: Weimar, Dessau, Berlin, Chicago. 1st paperback ed. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1978.
- For websites, go to www.atypeprimer.com

Index

Benton, Morris Fuller 36,

173

Civilité 26

Clarendon 38, 49, 61

228

classification, type 48-50 Berthold type foundry 41 A heads 132, 134, 135 ears 3 bibliographies 123 Cloister Black 48 'Egyptian' 36, 38 acknowledgments pages Bifur 14 Close, Chuck 226 Elzevir family 28 Cobden-Sanderson, ems/ens 3 active corners 184, 203, 'black' typeface 8 220 blackletter 20, 21, 48 T. J. 40 epigraphs 123 addenda 123 Bodoni 8, 12, 49 codices 18 Estienne, Henri and Adobe Systems, Inc. 46 Bauer Bodoni 13, 34, Colines, Simon de 26 Robert 26 Caslon 9, 31, 96, 204, 35, 97, 172 colophons 123 Etruscan alphabet 16, 17 Old Face Medium 9 colored type 80-87, exdenting text 125, 130, Garamond 26, 27, 28, Poster Bodoni 173 196-99 131, 153 Bodoni, Giambattista 34, for highlighting text extended typefaces 8, 72, 97, 148, 150, 152, 154, 193 126, 127, 161 62, 81 columnar layouts 138-43, Aicher, Otl 47 boldface 8, 36, 126, 127 'extra bold' typeface 8 Akzidenz Grotesk 9, 41, 50, for highlighting text 76, 180, 194 64-69, 80, 188, 213 Commercial Pi 7 Alcuin of York 19, 20 for indicating compositional Fell, Bishop John 28 hierarchies 158, 159 alphabets, ancient 16-17 requirements 104-105 Fibonacci sequences compressed/condensed 108-109, 188 American Type Founders for subheads 132, 133, 36 typefaces 8, 62, 80 fields 180, 182, 184 'book' typeface 8 Figgins, Vincent 36, 38 Antique 38 contents, tables of 122, financial statements see apex 2 bowls 3 123 contrast, use of 62-63, 85, tabular matter apostrophes 131 brackets 3 broadsides 170-76, 194 finials 3 appendices 123 87, 170 Arabic numerals 19 Cooper Black 14 flush left/flush right text Broadway 14 Architype Renner 43 Browning, Robert viiin copyright pages 123 94, 118, 151, 178 Aries 42 Brush Script 14 core messages 76 folio (paper size) 110 arms 2 bullets 131 counterforms/counters 3. folios 115, 118, 180, 187, 209, artwork, creating grids for 210, 211, 221 Bulmer 49 57-61, 71, 151, 170, 194 Courier 99 fonts 5-7 Arrighi, Ludovico degli 25 cross-alignment 144-45, footnotes 123 C heads 132, 133, 134, 135 203, 207, 208 forewords 123 ascenders 2, 105 asterisks, exdented 153 Caledonia 49 cross bars 3 form and counterform Avenir 44 capital letters 5 cross strokes 3 57-61 lapidary 17 crotches 3 formats, establishing 149, cursive, Roman 18 rustic 18 formatting text 94-95 B heads 132, 133, 134 small 5, 6, 134 Foundry, The 43 back matter 122, 123 square 18 barbs 2 captions 203 Dante 48 Fournier family 34 Monotype Dante 26 fractions, setting 149 baselines 2 cross alignment of 144 Baskerville 12, 32, 49, 52, Caroline minuscules 19, Deberny & Peignot Franklin Gothic 50 foundry 44 front matter 122, 123 59, 170 20, 48 see also Monotype Carter, Matthew 46 dedications 123 frontispieces 122, 123 Baskerville Caslon 12, 30, 48 descenders 2, 3, 105 Frutiger 44, 50 Frutiger, Adrian 39, 44 Baskerville, John 32, 34 see also Adobe Caslon Didot 49, 193 bastard title see half title Caslon, William 30 see also Linotype full titles 122 batarde 20, 26 Fust, Johann 20 Caslon, William, IV 36, Didot Bauer Bodoni see Bodoni 38, 50 Didot, Firmin 34 Futura 12, 13, 43, 50 Bauer foundry 35, 43 cedillas 5 digital type 37, 46, 162 Futura Black 14 Bauhaus 40 centered text 94, 95, 118 Dijck, Christoffel van 28 Futura Book 9, 98 beaks 3 Century 49 dingbats 7 display faces/type 14, 37, Bell 49 Charlemagne 19, 20 Bembo 12, 13, 25, 32, 48, charts see tabular matter 73, 91, 189 Garamond 12, 27, 48 see also Adobe Chinese characters 88 'drop cap' 118

'dumb quotes' 131

Dwiggins, W. A. 40

Garamond Garamond, Claude 26 Gill Sans 9, 12, 42, 50 glossaries 123 Glypha 39, 44 golden section 106-107, 108, 110, 116 Gothic News Gothic 50 Trade Gothic 50 'aothic' type 36 Goudy, Frederick W. 40 Goudy Text 14, 48 Grandjean, Philippe 32 Granjon, Robert 26, 27 Greek alphabet 16, 17 'greeking' 124 grid systems 176, 178, 179, 181 and complex compositions 194 components 180-87 expressing hierarchy 196-97 at large scale 194 simple 188-93 for text 200-11 for text and images 212-25 Griffo, Francesco 24, 25 'grotesque' 36 Grotesque 50 Grotesque Black 9 Gutenberg, Johann 20 Gutenberg Bible 20 autters 128, 151, 180, 182, 185, 189, 198, 202, 203, 208, 218

Gill, Eric 13, 42, 175

Haettenschweiler 14
half title 122, 123
headers 115, 118, 180
headlines 132, 203
cross alignment of
144–45
sidebar 209
see also titles
heads, secondary see
subheads
Helvetica 13, 50, 54, 99
Helvetica Black 58
Helvetica Neue 44
Hobo 14
hierarchies, expressing

146-48, 188-91,

196–97, 210, 224 with boldface 158, 159 subheads 134–35 highlighting text 126–30 Highsmith, Cyrus x Höll, Louis 35, 172 see also contrast; hierarchies

indenting text 118, 128, 129 for paragraphs 125 indexes 123 introductions 123 ISO system 113 italics 6, 8, 24, 25, 48, 62, 76, 81, 126, 152 for subheads 134, 153 'true' and 'obliques' 6 Ives, Norman 60

Jannon, Jean 27
Janson/Janson Text 10, 12,
48, 71, 97, 100—103, 105,
118, 126, 127, 162—67, 193
see also Linotype
Janson
Janson, Anton 29
Jenson 48
Jenson, Nicholas 22, 23
Joanna 42
Johnston, Edward 42
Jost, Heinrich 172

Kaufmann 14 Kelmscott Press 38 kerning 90 key words, highlighting 76-77 Kis, Nicholas 29 Kuenstler Script 49, 72

justified text 94, 95

Lawson, Alexander 48 layouts, text 116–18 columnar 138–43 see also grid systems leading 10, 105, 118, 184, 185, 202, 207 and line length 100–103

legs 3

letterforms 2-4 set widths 11 understanding 52-55 vertically written 88 letterspacing 90, 93 ligatures 4, 5, 149 light typefaces 8 line length 100-103, 118, 149, 205, 206 line spaces 149 in tabular matter 157-61 lining figures 6 links 4 Linotype Glypha 39 Didot 34, 60, 72, 76 Janson 28, 29 lists see tabular matter Lohse, Richard 40 loops 4 lowercase letters 5, 18, 19, 93 lowercase numerals 6, 11

Majoor, Martin 47 maiuscules 19 Manutius, Aldus 24 margins 114, 116, 180, 183, 200, 202, 213 meanings, reinforcement of of sentences 70-79 of words 64-69 measuring type 10-11 medians 2 'medium' typeface 8 Memphis 39, 49 Meta 50, 174 Meta Plus Normal 98 Meta Book 120 Meta Normal 9 minuscules 19, 20 Mistral 14, 49, 73 modern typefaces 49 Moholy-Nagy, László 40 Monotype Corporation 25, 175 Baskerville 5, 6, 7, 33, Dante 26 Morison, Stanley 25, 33,

Morris, William 38

Müller-Brockmann, Josef 40 Neuberg, Hans 40 New Graphic 40 News Gothic 50 numerals 6, 11, 19, 149 see also tabular matter

'obliques' 6
octavo (paper size) 110
Oldstyle typefaces 6,
48, 49
Onyx 14, 171
Open Type 11
Optima 50
orphans 136
Ostwald, Wilhelm 113
Oxford University Press
28

p see picas pages recto/verso 114 sizes 110, 118 numbers see folios Palatino 48 Pannartz, Arnold 22, 23 paper 18 American sizes 110-12 European sizes 113 papyrus 17 paragraphs 124-25 line spaces between 149 parchment 18 passive corners 184, 220 Pattek, Nina 226 Peignot 14 pens, reed 18 Perpetua 42, 175 Phœnician alphabet 16, 17 phototypesetting 37, 44 picas 10 pilcrows 124 Plantin, Christophe 28 Plantin-Moretus family 28 Playbill 14 points (measurements) 10 Powell, Gerry 171 preface 123 primes/double primes 131 printing presses 20 punctuation 7, 19

quarto (paper size) 110 quotation marks 131

Rand, Paul viii readability 117 recipes, setting 146-55 recto 114, 118 Renner, Paul 43 reversed type 128 Rockwell 49 Rogers, Bruce 40 Roman alphabet 16, 17, 18, 62 Roman numerals 19 roman typeface 8,81 Rotis type 'family' 47, 50 rotunda 20 Ruegg, Rudi 62 rules, horizontal 159-61 Runic 14 running feet 115, 186, 209 running heads 115, 121, 186, 209 running shoulders 115, 186

sans serif typefaces 36, 40, 41, 42, 43, 47, 50, 54-55, 63, 120 Scala 50 scale 77, 79 and color 86, 87 and structure 78 Schöffer, Peter 20, 22 script typefaces 49 semibold typefaces 8, 9 Serifa 12, 13, 44, 49, 98 serifs 4, 63 bracketed 38 slab 39 square 38, 49 see also sans serif typefaces shoulders 4 running 115, 186 sidebars 204, 209 slab serifs 39 Slimbach, Robert 27 small cap subheads 134 Snell Roundhand 49 spacing x see also letterspacing; line spaces

specimen books 162

specimen sheets 30, 168-69 Spiekermann, Erik 41, 47, 174 spines 4 Spira, Johannes da 22 spreads 142 spurs 4 square serif typefaces Stempel Foundry 29, 39 stems 4 Stone 50 Stone, Sumner 46, 47 stresses 4 strokes 2 subheads 132-33, 153, 209 hierarchy of 134-35 surprinted type 129 swashes 4 Sweynheym, Conrad 22, 23 Syntax 50 syntax, examining 74-75

tabular matter, setting 156-61 Tagliente, Giovantonio 25 tails 4 terminals 4 text area see text pages text figures 6 text layouts see layouts, text pages 114-15, 180, 182 text type 14, 114 Textura 20 textures (of typefaces) 96-98 'thin' typefaces 8 Thorne, Robert 36 tildes 5 Times Roman 49, 99 timetables, setting 156-61 title pages 122, 123 grid system for 188-93 titles 153 see also headlines Tory, Geofroy 26 Tournes, Jean de 26

'tracking' 90-92

Trade Gothic 50

transitional typefaces 49

Trajan 73

Ts'ai Lun 18
two-color poster 196—97
Twombly, Carol 31
type area see text pages
typefaces 8—9
classification of 48—50
comparing 12—13
and readability 93, 95,
100, 117
suitability of 96—98
type sizes see measuring
type
typewriter type 99

uncials/half uncials 19
Univers 6, 10, 12, 44–45,
46, 50, 52, 54, 72, 76,
91, 98, 126, 127, 157,
167–68
Thin Ultra Condensed
9
Universal News 7
Updike, Daniel Berkeley
40
uppercase letters 5, 16, 93
uppercase numerals 6,

vellum 18
verso 114
vertex 2
vertical type 88
visual rhythm 176
Vivarelli, Carlo 40
Voskens, Dirk and
Bartholomew 28

Walbaum 49 Warde, Beatrice 40 weather charts see tabular matter widows 136 Wolf, Rudolf 39

x heights 2, 96 maintaining 56 matching 126, 127

zero 19